

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Services: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least 1 composite sample for each 100 cu. yd.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 2. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 3. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mix.
 - 4. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M; cast and laboratory cure one set of three standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - 6. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test 1 specimen at 7 days and 2 specimens at 28 days.
 - a. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from 2 specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at 28 days.
- C. Strength of each concrete mix will be satisfactory if average of any 3 consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
- D. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
- E. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.

- F. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect.
- G. Remove and replace concrete pavement where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- H. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.13 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Remove and replace concrete pavement that is broken, damaged, or defective or that does not comply with requirements in this Section.
- B. Drill test cores, where directed by Architect, when necessary to determine magnitude of cracks or defective areas. Fill drilled core holes in satisfactory pavement areas with portland cement concrete bonded to pavement with epoxy adhesive.
- C. Protect concrete from damage. Exclude traffic from pavement for at least 14 days after placement. When construction traffic is permitted, maintain pavement as clean as possible by removing surface stains and spillage of materials as they occur.
- D. Maintain concrete pavement free of stains, discoloration, dirt, and other foreign material. Sweep concrete pavement not more than two days before date scheduled for Substantial Completion inspections.

END OF DOCUMENT

DIVISION **3**
CONCRETE

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 03300

CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section specifies cast-in place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes, for the following:
 - 1. Footings.
 - 2. Foundation walls.
 - 3. Slabs-on-grade.
 - 4. Suspended slabs.
 - 5. Concrete toppings.
 - 6. Building frame members.
 - 7. Building walls.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 2 Section "Earthwork" for drainage fill under slabs-on-grade.
 - 2. Division 2 Section "Cement Concrete Pavement" for concrete pavement and walks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash and other pozzolans, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume; subject to compliance with requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.
 - C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.
 - D. Welding certificates.
 - E. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with requirements:
 1. Aggregates.
 - F. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:
 1. Cementitious materials.
 2. Admixtures.
 3. Form materials and form-release agents.
 4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
 5. Fiber reinforcement.
 6. Waterstops.
 7. Curing compounds.
 8. Floor and slab treatments.
 9. Bonding agents.
 10. Adhesives.
 11. Vapor retarders.
 12. Semirigid joint filler.
 13. Joint-filler strips.
 14. Repair materials.
 - G. Floor surface flatness and levelness measurements to determine compliance with specified tolerances.
 - H. Field quality-control test and inspection reports.
 - I. Minutes of preinstallation conference.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.
 - B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-01 or an equivalent certification program.
 2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade I. Testing Agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician - Grade II.
- D. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from one source, and obtain admixtures through one source from a single manufacturer.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4, "Structural Welding Code--Reinforcing Steel."
- F. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:
1. ACI 301, "Specification for Structural Concrete."
 2. ACI 117, "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials."
- G. Concrete Testing Service: Owner to engage a qualified independent testing agency to perform material evaluation tests and to design concrete mixtures.
- H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."
1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:
 - a. Contractor's superintendent.
 - b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
 - c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
 - d. Concrete subcontractor.
 2. Review special inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, curing procedures, vapor barrier installation, steel reinforcement installation, floor and slab flatness and levelness measurement, and concrete protection.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.
- B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

- A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that will provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.
 - 1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
 - 2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:
 - a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
 - b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
 - c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
 - d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
- B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.
- C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that will produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt

irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

- D. Pan-Type Forms: Glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or formed steel, stiffened to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.
- E. Void Forms: Biodegradable paper surface, treated for moisture resistance, structurally sufficient to support weight of plastic concrete and other superimposed loads.
- F. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, **3/4 by 3/4 inch**, minimum.
- G. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that will not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and will not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.
 - 1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
- H. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off metal or glass-fiber-reinforced plastic form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.
 - 1. Furnish units that will leave no corrodible metal closer than **1 inch** to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
 - 2. Furnish ties that, when removed, will leave holes no larger than **1 inch** in diameter in concrete surface.
 - 3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60**, deformed.
- B. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60**, deformed bars, assembled with clips.
- C. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 82, as drawn.
- D. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 496.
- E. Plain-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 185, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.
- F. Deformed-Steel Welded Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 497, flat sheet.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

- A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, **Grade 60**, plain-steel bars, cut bars true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

- B. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:
 - 1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

- A. Cementitious Material: Use the following cementitious materials, of the same type, brand, and source, throughout Project:
 - 1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type II, white. Supplement with the following:
 - a. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C.
 - b. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.
 - 2. Blended Hydraulic Cement: ASTM C 595, Type IS, portland blast-furnace slag.
- B. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, amorphous silica.
- C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33, Class 3S coarse aggregate or better, graded.
 - 1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch nominal.
 - 2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.
- D. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 ADMIXTURES

- A. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260.
- B. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that will not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.
 - 1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
 - 2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
 - 3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
 - 4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.
 - 5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
 - 6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

C. Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete and complying with ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type C.

1. Available Products:

- a. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN.
- b. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucon CIA.
- c. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI.
- d. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete CNI.
- e. Sika Corporation; Sika CNI.

D. Non-Set-Accelerating Corrosion-Inhibiting Admixture: Commercially formulated, non-set-accelerating, anodic inhibitor or mixed cathodic and anodic inhibitor; capable of forming a protective barrier and minimizing chloride reactions with steel reinforcement in concrete.

1. Available Products:

- a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Catexol 1000CI.
- b. Boral Material Technologies, Inc.; Boral BCN2.
- c. Cortec Corporation; MCI 2000.
- d. Grace Construction Products, W. R. Grace & Co.; DCI-S.
- e. Master Builders, Inc.; Rheocrete 222+.
- f. Sika Corporation; FerroGard-901.

E. Color Pigment: ASTM C 979, synthetic mineral-oxide pigments or colored water-reducing admixtures; color stable, free of carbon black, nonfading, and resistant to lime and other alkalis.

1. AvailableManufacturers:

- a. Bayer Corporation.
- b. ChemMasters.
- c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc.; a Dayton Superior Company.
- d. Davis Colors.
- e. Elementis Pigments, Inc.
- f. Hoover Color Corporation.
- g. Lambert Corporation.
- h. Scofield, L. M. Company.
- i. Solomon Colors.

2. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 WATERSTOPS

- A. Flexible Rubber Waterstops: CE CRD-C 513, with factory-installed metal eyelets, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.
1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Greenstreak.
 - b. Progress Unlimited, Inc.
 - c. Williams Products, Inc.
 2. Profile: Flat, dumbbell with center bulb Ribbed with center bulb Ribbed without center bulb As indicated.
 3. Dimensions: AS REQUIRED.

2.8 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class C , or polyethylene sheet, ASTM D 4397, not less than 10 mils thick. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive joint tape.
1. Available Products:
 - a. Fortifiber Corporation; Moistop Plus.
 - b. Raven Industries Inc.; Dura Skrim.
 - c. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn Type.
 - d. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap, 10 mils.
 - B. Granular Fill: Clean mixture of crushed stone or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D 448, Size 57, with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch sieve and 0 to 5 percent passing a No. 8 sieve.
 - C. Fine-Graded Granular Material: Clean mixture of crushed stone, crushed gravel, and manufactured or natural sand; ASTM D 448, Size 10, with 100 percent passing a 3/8-inch sieve, 10 to 30 percent passing a No. 100 sieve, and at least 5 percent passing No. 200 sieve; complying with deleterious substance limits of ASTM C 33 for fine aggregates.

2.9 FLOOR AND SLAB TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Clear, chemically reactive, waterborne solution of inorganic silicate or silicate materials and proprietary components; odorless; colorless; that penetrates, hardens, and densifies concrete surfaces.
1. Available Products:

- a. Burke by Edoco; Titan Hard.
- b. ChemMasters; Chemisil Plus.
- c. ChemTec International; ChemTec One.
- d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Intraseal.
- e. Curecrete Distribution Inc.; Ashford Formula.
- f. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Sure Hard.
- g. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Euco Diamond Hard.
- h. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureHard.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Seal Hard.
- j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Liqui-Hard.
- k. Metalcrete Industries; Floorsaver.
- l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Duranox.
- m. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Buff Hard.
- n. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Industraseal.
- o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon StarSeal PS.

2.10 CURING MATERIALS

- A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

1. Available Products:

- a. Axim Concrete Technologies; Cimfilm.
- b. Burke by Edoco; BurkeFilm.
- c. ChemMasters; Spray-Film.
- d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Aquafilm.
- e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Sure Film.
- f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Eucobar.
- g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Vapor Aid.
- h. Lambert Corporation; Lambco Skin.
- i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; E-Con.
- j. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; Confilm.
- k. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Sealtight Evapre.
- l. Metalcrete Industries; Waterhold.
- m. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Monofilm.
- n. Sika Corporation, Inc.; SikaFilm.
- o. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Finishing Aid.
- p. Unitex; Pro-Film.
- q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Monofilm ER.
- r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex EnvioAssist.

- B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. when dry.

- C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.
- D. Water: Potable.
- E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, dissipating.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Curing Compound #2 DR WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Aqua Resin Cure.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; W.B. Resin Cure.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day Chem Rez Cure (J-11-W).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Kurez DR VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Thinfilm 420.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Aqua Kure-Clear.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; L&M Cure R.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; 1100 Clear.
 - k. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Resin Cure E.
 - l. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Resi-Chem Clear Cure.
 - m. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Horncure WB 30.
 - n. Unitex; Hydro Cure 309.
 - o. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Maxcure Resin Clear.
 - p. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex Enviocure 100.
- F. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Anti-Hydro International, Inc.; AH Clear Cure WB.
 - b. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II.
 - c. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure & Seal 20.
 - d. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Cure and Seal WB.
 - e. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-18).
 - f. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Aqua Cure VOX.
 - g. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Cure & Seal 309 Emulsion.
 - h. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
 - i. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
 - k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure.
 - l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 150E.
 - m. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.

- n. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB 150.
 - o. Unitex; Hydro Seal.
 - p. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Hydrasheen 15 percent
 - q. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 309.
- G. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing Compound: ASTM C 309, Type 1, Class B, 18 to 25 percent solids, nondissipating, certified by curing compound manufacturer to not interfere with bonding of floor covering.
- 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Spartan Cote WB II 20 Percent.
 - b. ChemMasters; Safe-Cure Clear.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; High Seal.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Safe Cure and Seal (J-19).
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Diamond Clear VOX.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; SureCure Emulsion.
 - g. Lambert Corporation; Glazecote Sealer-20.
 - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Dress & Seal WB.
 - i. MBT Protection and Repair, Div. of ChemRex; MasterKure-N-Seal VOC.
 - j. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-20.
 - k. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 0800.
 - l. Nox-Crete Products Group, Kinsman Corporation; Cure & Seal 200E.
 - m. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal.
 - n. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 18 Percent E.
 - o. Tamms Industries, Inc.; Clearseal WB STD.
 - p. Unitex; Hydro Seal 18.
 - q. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25
 - r. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Starseal 0800.
- H. Clear, Solvent-Borne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
- 1. AvailableProducts:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315.
 - b. ChemMasters; Spray-Cure & Seal Plus.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315.
 - d. Dayton Superior Corporation; Day-Chem Cure and Seal (J-22UV).
 - e. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear.
 - f. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25.
 - g. Lambert Corporation; UV Super Seal.
 - h. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal Plus.
 - i. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; CS-309/30.
 - j. Metalcrete Industries; Seal N Kure 0.
 - k. Sonneborn, Div. of ChemRex; Kure-N-Seal 5.

- l. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal 300.
 - m. Unitex; Solvent Seal 1315.
 - n. US Mix Products Company; US Spec CS-25
 - o. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Certi-Vex AC 1315

- I. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Burke by Edoco; Cureseal 1315 WB.
 - b. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
 - c. Conspec Marketing & Manufacturing Co., Inc., a Dayton Superior Company; Sealcure 1315 WB.
 - d. Euclid Chemical Company (The); Super Diamond Clear VOX.
 - e. Kaufman Products, Inc.; Sure Cure 25 Emulsion.
 - f. Lambert Corporation; UV Safe Seal.
 - g. L&M Construction Chemicals, Inc.; Lumiseal WB Plus.
 - h. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
 - i. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
 - j. Symons Corporation, a Dayton Superior Company; Cure & Seal 31 Percent E.
 - k. Tamms Industries, Inc.; LusterSeal WB 300.
 - l. Unitex; Hydro Seal 25.
 - m. US Mix Products Company; US Spec Radiance UV-25.
 - n. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon Starseal 1315.

2.11 RELATED MATERIALS

- A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.
- B. Semirigid Joint Filler: Two-component, semirigid, 100 percent solids, epoxy resin with a Type A shore durometer hardness of 80 or aromatic polyurea with a Type A shore durometer hardness range of 90 to 95 per ASTM D 2240.
- C. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059, Type II, non-redispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.
- D. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:
 - 1. Types I and II, non-load bearing or IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.
- E. Reglets: Fabricate reglets of not less than **0.0217-inch-** thick, galvanized steel sheet. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of reglet to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

- F. Dovetail Anchor Slots: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, not less than 0.0336 inch thick, with bent tab anchors. Temporarily fill or cover face opening of slots to prevent intrusion of concrete or debris.

2.12 REPAIR MATERIALS

- A. Repair Underlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of underlayment manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by underlayment manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 4100 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.
- B. Repair Overlayment: Cement-based, polymer-modified, self-leveling product that can be applied in thicknesses from 1/8 inch and that can be feathered at edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 - 1. Cement Binder: ASTM C 150, portland cement or hydraulic or blended hydraulic cement as defined in ASTM C 219.
 - 2. Primer: Product of topping manufacturer recommended for substrate, conditions, and application.
 - 3. Aggregate: Well-graded, washed gravel, 1/8 to 1/4 inch or coarse sand as recommended by topping manufacturer.
 - 4. Compressive Strength: Not less than 5000 psi at 28 days when tested according to ASTM C 109/C 109M.

2.13 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

- A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301.
 - 1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.
- B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:
 - 1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
 - 2. Combined Fly Ash and Pozzolan: 25 percent.
 - 3. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent.

4. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolan and Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: 50 percent portland cement minimum, with fly ash or pozzolan not exceeding 25 percent.
 5. Silica Fume: 10 percent.
 6. Combined Fly Ash, Pozzolans, and Silica Fume: 35 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
 7. Combined Fly Ash or Pozzolans, Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag, and Silica Fume: 50 percent with fly ash or pozzolans not exceeding 25 percent and silica fume not exceeding 10 percent.
- C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.30 percent by weight of cement.
- D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
 2. Use water-reducing and retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
 3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a water-cementitious materials ratio below 0.50.
 4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.
- E. Color Pigment: Add color pigment to concrete mixture according to manufacturer's written instructions and to result in hardened concrete color consistent with approved mockup.

2.14 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

- A. Footings: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: As shown on Plans, at 28 days.
 2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.40.
 3. Slump Limit: 5 inches for concrete with verified slump of 2 to 4 inches before adding high-range water-reducing admixture or plasticizing admixture, plus or minus 1 inch.
 4. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
- B. Slabs-on-Grade: Proportion normal-weight concrete mixture as follows:
1. Minimum Compressive Strength: As shown on Plans, at 28 days.
 2. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd. (309 kg/cu. m).
 3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
 4. Air Content: 5-1/2 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of delivery for 1-1/2-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
 5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of troweled finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.15 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

- A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.16 CONCRETE MIXING

- A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M and ASTM C 1116, and furnish batch ticket information.
 - 1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F, reduce mixing and delivery time from 75 minutes to 55 minutes.
- B. Project-Site Mixing: Measure, batch, and mix concrete materials and concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M. Mix concrete materials in appropriate drum-type batch machine mixer.
 - 1. For mixer capacity of 1 cu. yd. or smaller, continue mixing at least 1-1/2 minutes, but not more than 5 minutes after ingredients are in mixer, before any part of batch is released.
 - 2. For mixer capacity larger than 1 cu. yd, increase mixing time by 15 seconds for each additional 1 cu. yd.
 - 3. Provide batch ticket for each batch discharged and used in the Work, indicating Project identification name and number, date, mixture type, mixture time, quantity, and amount of water added. Record approximate location of final deposit in structure.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK

- A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301, to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.
- B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117.
- C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347R as abrupt or gradual, as follows:
 - 1. Class A, 1/8 inch for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
 - 2. Class B, 1/4 inch for rough-formed finished surfaces.
- D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

- E. Fabricate forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.
 - 1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
 - 2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.
- F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.
- G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.
- H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.
- I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.
- J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.
- K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.
- L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEMS

- A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
 - 3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

- A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than **50 deg F** for 24 hours after placing concrete, if concrete is hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations and curing and protection operations are maintained.
 - 1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that supports weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved at least 70 percent of its 28-day design compressive strength.
 - 2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.
- B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material will not be acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.
- C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 SHORES AND RESHORES

- A. Comply with **ACI 318** and ACI 301 for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.
 - 1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.
- B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.
- C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.5 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Plastic Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair vapor retarders according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Lap joints **6 inches** and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.
- B. Granular Course: Cover vapor retarder with granular fill, moisten, and compact with mechanical equipment to elevation tolerances of plus **0 inch** or minus **3/4 inch**.

1. Place and compact a 1/2-inch thick layer of fine-graded granular material over granular fill.

3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

- A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for placing reinforcement.
 1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.
- B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that would reduce bond to concrete.
- C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.
 1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4, where indicated.
- D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.
- E. Install welded wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.
- F. Epoxy-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged epoxy coatings with epoxy repair coating according to ASTM D 3963/D 3963M. Use epoxy-coated steel wire ties to fasten epoxy-coated steel reinforcement.
- G. Zinc-Coated Reinforcement: Repair cut and damaged zinc coatings with zinc repair material according to ASTM A 780. Use galvanized steel wire ties to fasten zinc-coated steel reinforcement.

3.7 JOINTS

- A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.
- B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Architect.
 1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints, unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
 2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches into concrete.

3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
 4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
 5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
 6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
 7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
- C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:
1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of **1/8 inch**. Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
 2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut **1/8-inch** wide joints into concrete when cutting action will not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.
- D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.
1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than **1/2 inch** or more than **1 inch** below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
 3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.
- E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.
- ### 3.8 WATERSTOPS
- A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

- B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

- A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections have been performed.
- B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Architect.
- C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301.
 - 1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.
- D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete will be placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.
 - 1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth to not exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
 - 2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301.
 - 3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.
- E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.
 - 1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
 - 2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
 - 3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
 - 4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
 - 5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

- F. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.
1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301.
 2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
 3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.
- G. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 and as follows:
1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
 2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

- A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
- B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.
- C. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

- A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.
- B. Scratch Finish: While still plastic, texture concrete surface that has been screeded and bull-floated or darbied. Use stiff brushes, brooms, or rakes to produce a profile amplitude of 1/4 inch in 1 direction.

1. Apply scratch finish to surfaces indicated and to receive mortar setting beds for bonded cementitious floor finishes.
- C. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.
1. Apply float finish to surfaces indicated to receive trowel finish and to be covered with fluid-applied or sheet waterproofing.
- D. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.
1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces indicated, exposed to view or to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.
 2. Finish surfaces to the following tolerances, according to [ASTM E 1155](#), for a randomly trafficked floor surface:
 - a. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 25; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 17; and of levelness, F(L) 15.
 - b. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 35; and of levelness, F(L) 25; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 17; for slabs-on-grade.
 - c. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 20; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 24; and of levelness, F(L) 15; for suspended slabs.
 - d. Specified overall values of flatness, F(F) 45; and of levelness, F(L) 35; with minimum local values of flatness, F(F) 30; and of levelness, F(L) 24.
 3. Finish and measure surface so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unlevelled, freestanding, [10-foot](#) long straightedge resting on 2 high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed [1/8 inch](#).
- E. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces indicated or where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thin-set method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.
1. Comply with flatness and levelness tolerances for trowel finished floor surfaces.
- F. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, and ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.
1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

- G. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:
 - 1. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. of dampened slip-resistive aggregate over surface in 1 or 2 applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
 - 2. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
 - 3. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEMS

- A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures, unless otherwise indicated, after work of other trades is in place. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.
- B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.
- C. Equipment Bases and Foundations: Provide machine and equipment bases and foundations as shown on Drawings. Set anchor bolts for machines and equipment at correct elevations, complying with diagrams or templates from manufacturer furnishing machines and equipment.
- D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel-finish concrete surfaces.

3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

- A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 301 for hot-weather protection during curing.
- B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.
- C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period,

moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for the remainder of the curing period.

- D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.
- E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:
1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:
 - a. Water.
 - b. Continuous water-fog spray.
 - c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with **12-inch** lap over adjacent absorptive covers.
 2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least **12 inches**, and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period using cover material and waterproof tape.
 - a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
 - b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
 - c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project..
 3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.
 - a. After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer unless manufacturer certifies curing compound will not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.
 4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.14 LIQUID FLOOR TREATMENTS

- A. Penetrating Liquid Floor Treatment: Prepare, apply, and finish penetrating liquid floor treatment according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Remove curing compounds, sealers, oil, dirt, laitance, and other contaminants and complete surface repairs.
 - 2. Apply liquid until surface is saturated, scrubbing into surface until a gel forms; rewet; and repeat brooming or scrubbing. Rinse with water; remove excess material until surface is dry. Apply a second coat in a similar manner if surface is rough or porous.
- B. Sealing Coat: Uniformly apply a continuous sealing coat of curing and sealing compound to hardened concrete by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.15 JOINT FILLING

- A. Prepare, clean, and install joint filler according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Remove dirt, debris, saw cuttings, curing compounds, and sealers from joints; leave contact faces of joint clean and dry.
- C. Install semirigid joint filler full depth in saw-cut joints and at least **2 inches** deep in formed joints. Overfill joint and trim joint filler flush with top of joint after hardening.

3.16 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

- A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect's approval.
- B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of one part portland cement to two and one-half parts fine aggregate passing a **No. 16** sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.
- C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.
 - 1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than **1/2 inch** in any dimension in solid concrete, but not less than **1 inch** in depth. Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
 - 2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar will match

- surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.
- D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.
1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of **0.01 inch** wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
 2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
 3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
 4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
 5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of **1/4 inch** to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.
 6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes **1 inch** or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a **3/4-inch** clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
 7. Repair random cracks and single holes **1 inch** or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.
- E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.
- F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage a special inspector qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Inspections:
 - 1. Steel reinforcement placement.
 - 2. Steel reinforcement welding.
 - 3. Headed bolts and studs.
 - 4. Verification of use of required design mixture.
 - 5. Concrete placement, including conveying and depositing.
 - 6. Curing procedures and maintenance of curing temperature.
 - 7. Verification of concrete strength before removal of shores and forms from beams and slabs.
- C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172 shall be performed according to the following requirements:
 - 1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
 - 2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.
 - a. When frequency of testing will provide fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.
 - 3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
 - 4. Air Content: ASTM C 231, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below and when 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.
 - 6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
 - 7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.
 - a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
 - b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
 - b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.
 9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
 10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
 11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.
 12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
 13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
 14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.
- D. Measure floor and slab flatness and levelness according to ASTM E 1155 within 48 hours of finishing.

END OF DOCUMENT

DIVISION **5**
METALS

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 05120
STRUCTURAL STEEL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Structural steel.
 2. Architecturally exposed structural steel.
 3. Prefabricated building columns.
 4. Grout.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel lintels or shelf angles not attached to structural-steel frame miscellaneous steel fabrications and other metal items not defined as structural steel.
 2. Division 9 painting Sections for surface preparation and priming requirements.
 3. Division 13 Section "Metal Building Systems" for structural steel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Structural Steel: Elements of structural-steel frame, as classified by AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," that support design loads.
- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Structural steel designated as architecturally exposed structural steel in the Contract Documents.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Connections: Provide details of connections required by the Contract Documents to be selected or completed by structural-steel fabricator to withstand loads indicated and comply with other information and restrictions indicated.
1. Select and complete connections using schematic details indicated and AISC's "Manual of Steel Construction, Load and Resistance Factor Design,"

2. Engineering Responsibility: Fabricator's responsibilities include using a qualified professional engineer to prepare structural analysis data for structural-steel connections.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.
 1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
 2. Include embedment drawings.
 3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld.
 4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical high-strength bolted connections.
 5. For structural-steel connections indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data prepared by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Mill Test Reports: Signed by manufacturers certifying that the following products comply with requirements:
 1. Structural steel including chemical and physical properties.
 2. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
 3. Direct-tension indicators.
 4. Tension-control, high-strength bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
 5. Shear stud connectors.
 6. Shop primers.
 7. Nonshrink grout.
- E. Source quality-control test reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector.
- B. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant.
- C. Shop-Painting Applicators: Qualified according to "Standard Procedure for Evaluating Qualifications of Shop Painting Applicators."

- D. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- E. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:
 - 1. AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
 - 2. AISC's "Seismic Provisions for Structural Steel Buildings" and "Supplement No. 2."
 - 3. AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 4. AISC's "Specification for the Design of Steel Hollow Structural Sections."
 - 5. AISC's "Specification for Allowable Stress Design of Single-Angle Members or Specification for Load and Resistance Factor Design of Single-Angle Members."
 - 6. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- F. Mockups: Build mockups of architecturally exposed structural steel to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Coordinate finish painting requirements with Division 9 painting Sections.
 - 2. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from erosion and deterioration.
 - 1. Store fasteners in a protected place. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
 - 2. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Furnish anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

- A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M, Grade 50.
- B. Channels, Angles, M or , S-Shapes: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- D. Corrosion-Resisting Structural Steel: ASTM A 588/A 588M, Grade 50.
- E. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500, Grade B or C, structural tubing.
- F. Corrosion-Resisting Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 847, structural tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E or S, Grade B.
 - 1. Weight Class: Standard.
 - 2. Finish: Black, except where indicated to be galvanized.
- H. Medium-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 27/A 27M, Grade 65-35, carbon steel.
- I. High-Strength Steel Castings: ASTM A 148/A 148M, Grade 80-50 , carbon or alloy steel.
- J. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

- A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 , Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
 - 2. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 compressible-washer type.
 - a. Finish: Plain Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490 , Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563 heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436) hardened carbon-steel washers, plain.
 - 1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490 compressible-washer type, plain.

- C. Tension-Control, High-Strength Bolt-Nut-Washer Assemblies: ASTM F 1852, Type 1, [heavy hex] [round] head steel structural bolts with splined ends; **ASTM A 563** heavy hex carbon-steel nuts; and **ASTM F 436** hardened carbon-steel washers.
 - 1. Finish: Plain Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- D. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1, Type B.
- E. Unheaded Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable ASTM A 354 ASTM A 449 ASTM A 572/A 572M, Grade **50**.
 - 1. Configuration: Hooked.
 - 2. Nuts: **ASTM A 563** [heavy]hex carbon steel.
 - 3. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 4. Washers: **ASTM F 436** hardened carbon steel.
 - 5. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C Mechanically deposited zinc coating, ASTM B 695, Class 50.
- F. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36 ASTM F 1554, Grade 55, weldable **ASTM A 307, Grade A** , straight.
 - 1. Nuts: **ASTM A 563** heavy hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Washers: **ASTM F 436** hardened carbon steel.
 - 4. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- G. Threaded Rods: **ASTM A 307, Grade A** .
 - 1. Nuts: **ASTM A 563** heavy hex carbon steel.
 - 2. Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
 - 3. Finish: Hot-dip zinc coating, ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- H. Clevises Turnbuckles: ASTM A 108, Grade 1035, cold-finished carbon steel.
- I. Eye Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1030, cold-finished carbon steel.
- J. Sleeve Nuts: ASTM A 108, Grade 1018, cold-finished carbon steel.

2.3 PRIMER

- A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer.
- B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: MPI#18, MPI#19, or SSPC-Paint 20.

2.4 GROUT

- A. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404, Size No. 2. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- B. Metallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, metallic aggregate grout, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.
- C. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

2.5 FABRICATION

- A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
 - 1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
 - 2. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/ A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
 - 3. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
 - 4. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.
- B. Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel: Comply with fabrication requirements, including tolerance limits, of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for structural steel identified as architecturally exposed structural steel.
 - 1. Fabricate with exposed surfaces smooth, square, and free of surface blemishes including pitting, rust, scale, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, and roughness.
 - 2. Remove blemishes by filling or grinding or by welding and grinding, before cleaning, treating, and shop priming.
- C. Thermal Cutting: Perform thermal cutting by machine to greatest extent possible.
 - 1. Plane thermally cut edges to be welded to comply with requirements in AWS D1.1.
- D. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.
- E. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

- F. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted.
- G. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- H. Steel Wall-Opening Framing: Select true and straight members for fabricating steel wall-opening framing to be attached to structural steel. Straighten as required to provide uniform, square, and true members in completed wall framing.
- I. Welded Door Frames: Build up welded door frames attached to structural steel. Weld exposed joints continuously and grind smooth. Plug-weld fixed steel bar stops to frames. Secure removable stops to frames with countersunk, cross-recessed head machine screws, uniformly spaced not more than **10 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for passage of other work through steel framing members.
 - 1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.
 - 2. Base-Plate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
 - 3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
 - 1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
 - 1. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
 - 2. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
 - 3. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

2.7 PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. General: Prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members encased in manufacturer's standard insulating concrete for fire protection and enclosed in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell.
 - 1. Concrete Fill: Manufacturer's standard-mix structural concrete, with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 5000 psi, machine mixed and mechanically vibrated during placement to produce concrete fill free of voids.
- B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Provide prefabricated building column listed and labeled by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for ratings indicated, based on testing according to ASTM E 119.
- C. Column Configuration: Provide columns of sizes and shapes indicated. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as required to suit type of structure indicated.
- D. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering prefabricated building columns that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- E. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide prefabricated building columns by one of the following:
 - 1. Black Rock Column, Inc.
 - 2. Dean, George H. Inc.
 - 3. Fire-Trol Division; Dean Lally L.P.

2.8 SHOP PRIMING

- A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:
 - 1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches.
 - 2. Surfaces to be field welded.
 - 3. Surfaces to be high-strength bolted with slip-critical connections.
 - 4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
 - 5. Galvanized surfaces.
- B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
 - 1. SSPC-SP 2, "Hand Tool Cleaning."
 - 2. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
 - 3. SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning."
 - 4. SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 5. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4, "Brush-Off Blast Cleaning."

6. SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."
 7. SSPC-SP 10/NACE No. 2, "Near-White Blast Cleaning."
 8. SSPC-SP 11, "Power Tool Cleaning to Bare Metal."
 9. SSPC-SP 14/NACE No. 8, "Industrial Blast Cleaning."
- C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a dry film thickness of not less than **1.5 mils**. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.
1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
 2. Apply two coats of shop paint to inaccessible surfaces after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.
- D. Painting: Apply a 1-coat, nonasphaltic primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide 7.00, "Painting System Guide 7.00: Guide for Selecting One-Coat Shop Painting Systems," to provide a dry film thickness of not less than **1.5 mils**.

2.9 GALVANIZING

- A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/ A 123M.
1. Fill vent holes and grind smooth after galvanizing.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Owner will engage an independent testing and inspecting agency to perform shop tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
1. Provide testing agency with access to places where structural-steel work is being fabricated or produced to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.
- C. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- D. Welded Connections: In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded connections will be tested and inspected according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
1. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 2. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 3. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

4. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- E. In addition to visual inspection, shop-welded shear connectors will be tested and inspected according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
 1. Bend tests will be performed if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 2. Tests will be conducted on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments, with steel erector present, for compliance with requirements.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

- A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings."
- B. Base and Bearing Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting base and bearing plates. Clean bottom surface of base and bearing plates.
 1. Set base and bearing plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
 2. Weld plate washers to top of base plate.

3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of base or bearing plate before packing with grout.
 4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and base or bearing plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.
- C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel and architecturally exposed structural steel within AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."
- D. Align and adjust various members forming part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that will be in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.
1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
 2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.
- E. Splice members only where indicated.
- F. Remove erection bolts on welded, architecturally exposed structural steel; fill holes with plug welds; and grind smooth at exposed surfaces.
- G. Do not use thermal cutting during erection.
- H. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.
- I. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

- A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.
1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.
- B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1 for welding procedure specifications, tolerances, appearance, and quality of welds and for methods used in correcting welding work.
1. Comply with AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" and "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural

Steel Buildings" for bearing, adequacy of temporary connections, alignment, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.

2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.
3. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that will maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances of AISC's "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges" for mill material.
4. Verify that weld sizes, fabrication sequence, and equipment used for architecturally exposed structural steel will limit distortions to allowable tolerances. Prevent weld show-through on exposed steel surfaces.
 - a. Grind butt welds flush.
 - b. Grind or fill exposed fillet welds to smooth profile. Dress exposed welds.

3.5 PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings--Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design or Load and Resistance Factor Design Specification for Structural Steel Buildings," manufacturer's written recommendations, and requirements of testing and inspecting agency that apply to the fire-resistance rating indicated.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to inspect field welds and high-strength bolted connections.
- B. Bolted Connections: Shop-bolted connections will be tested and inspected according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."
- C. Welded Connections: Field welds will be visually inspected according to AWS D1.1.
 1. In addition to visual inspection, field welds will be tested according to AWS D1.1 and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
 - a. Liquid Penetrant Inspection: ASTM E 165.
 - b. Magnetic Particle Inspection: ASTM E 709; performed on root pass and on finished weld. Cracks or zones of incomplete fusion or penetration will not be accepted.
 - c. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.
 - d. Radiographic Inspection: ASTM E 94.
- D. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1 for stud welding and as follows:
 1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than- continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
 2. Conduct tests on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested, according to requirements in AWS D1.1.

- E. Correct deficiencies in Work that test reports and inspections indicate does not comply with the Contract Documents.

3.7 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Repair damaged galvanized coatings on galvanized items with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Touchup Painting: After installation, promptly clean, prepare, and prime or reprime field connections, rust spots, and abraded surfaces of prime-painted joists and accessories, bearing plates, and abutting structural steel.
 - 1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.
 - 2. Apply a compatible primer of same type as shop primer used on adjacent surfaces.
- C. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 05400

COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Exterior load-bearing wall framing.
2. Interior load-bearing wall framing.
3. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.
4. Roof rafter framing.
5. Ceiling joist framing.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for masonry shelf angles and connections.
2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board" for interior non-load-bearing, metal-stud framing and ceiling-suspension assemblies.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed metal framing capable of withstanding design loads within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Design Loads: As indicated.
2. Deflection Limits: Design framing systems to withstand design loads without deflections greater than the following:
 - a. Exterior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height.
 - b. Interior Load-Bearing Wall Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height under a horizontal load of 5 lbf/sq. ft.
 - c. Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the wall height.
 - d. Floor Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/480 for live loads and 1/360 for total loads of the span.

- e. Roof Rafter Framing: Horizontal deflection of 1/240 of the horizontally projected span.
 - f. Ceiling Joist Framing: Vertical deflection of 1/240 of the span.
3. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
 4. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure as follows:
 - a. Upward and downward movement of 1/2 inch.
- B. Cold-Formed Steel Framing, General: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
1. Headers: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
 2. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.
 3. Roof Trusses: Design according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of cold-formed metal framing product and accessory indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed metal framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners. Show reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.
1. For cold-formed metal framing indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- C. Welding certificates.
- D. Product Test Reports: From a qualified testing agency, unless otherwise stated, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements, based on evaluation of comprehensive tests for current products:
1. Steel sheet.
 2. Expansion anchors.
 3. Power-actuated anchors.

4. Mechanical fasteners.
5. Vertical deflection clips.
6. Horizontal drift deflection clips
7. Miscellaneous structural clips and accessories.

E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For cold-formed metal framing.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of Shop Drawings, design calculations, and other structural data by a qualified professional engineer.
- B. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of cold-formed metal framing that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.
- C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency, acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, qualified according to ASTM E 329 to conduct the testing indicated.
- D. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency, or in-house testing with calibrated test equipment indicating steel sheet complies with requirements, including base-metal thickness, yield strength, tensile strength, total elongation, chemical requirements, ductility, and metallic-coating thickness.
- E. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code--Steel," and AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
- F. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Where indicated, provide cold-formed metal framing identical to that of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- G. AISI Specifications and Standards: Comply with AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members" and its "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions."
 1. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Truss Design."
 2. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Header Design."
- H. Comply with AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Prescriptive Method for One and Two Family Dwellings."
- I. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.
- B. Store cold-formed metal framing, protect with a waterproof covering, and ventilate to avoid condensation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering cold-formed metal framing that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide cold-formed metal framing by one of the following:
 - 1. Allied Studco.
 - 2. AllSteel Products, Inc.
 - 3. California Expanded Metal Products Company.
 - 4. Clark Steel Framing.
 - 5. Consolidated Fabricators Corp.; Building Products Division.
 - 6. Craco Metals Manufacturing, LLC.
 - 7. Custom Stud, Inc.
 - 8. Dale/Incor.
 - 9. Design Shapes in Steel.
 - 10. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 - 11. Formetal Co. Inc. (The).
 - 12. Innovative Steel Systems.
 - 13. MarinoWare; a division of Ware Industries.
 - 14. Quail Run Building Materials, Inc.
 - 15. SCAFCO Corporation.
 - 16. Southeastern Stud & Components, Inc.
 - 17. Steel Construction Systems.
 - 18. Steeler, Inc.
 - 19. Super Stud Building Products, Inc.
 - 20. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating weight as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: G60, A60, AZ50, or GF30.

- B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:
 - 1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
 - 2. Coating: **G90**.

2.3 LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with straight flanges.
- C. Steel Box or Back-to-Back Headers: Manufacturer's standard C-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
- D. Steel Double-L Headers: Manufacturer's standard L-shapes used to form header beams, of web depths indicated.

2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

- A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges.
- B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
- C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
 - b. MarinoWare, a division of Ware Industries.
 - c. SCAFCO Corporation
 - d. The Steel Network, Inc.
- D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

- E. Double Deflection Tracks: Manufacturer's double, deep-leg, U-shaped steel tracks, consisting of nested inner and outer tracks; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges.
 - 1. Outer Track: Of web depth to allow free vertical movement of inner track, with flanges designed to support horizontal and lateral loads and transfer them to the primary structure.
 - 2. Inner Track: Of web depth indicated.
- F. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure.

2.5 ROOF-RAFTER FRAMING

- A. Steel Rafters: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with stiffened flanges.
- B. Built-up Members: Built-up members of manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel section, with stiffened flanges, nested into a U-shaped steel section joist track, with unstiffened flanges; unpunched; of web depths indicated.

2.6 CEILING JOIST FRAMING

- A. Steel Ceiling Joists: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel sections, of web depths indicated, with stiffened flanges.

2.7 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

- A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from steel sheet, ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of same grade and coating weight used for framing members.
- B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated, as follows:
 - 1. Supplementary framing.
 - 2. Bracing, bridging, and solid blocking.
 - 3. Web stiffeners.
 - 4. Anchor clips.
 - 5. End clips.
 - 6. Foundation clips.
 - 7. Gusset plates.
 - 8. Stud kickers, knee braces, and girts.
 - 9. Joist hangers and end closures.
 - 10. Hole reinforcing plates.
 - 11. Backer plates.

2.8 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

- A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.
- B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel hex-headed bolts, headless, hooked bolts and carbon-steel nuts; and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.
- C. Expansion Anchors: Fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 5 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 10 times design load, as determined by testing per ASTM E 1190 conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping steel drill screws.
 - 1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing, manufacturer's standard elsewhere.
- F. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS standards.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780.
- B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.
- C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, and plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107, with fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.
- D. Shims: Load bearing, high-density multimonomer plastic, nonleaching.
- E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members.

2.10 FABRICATION

- A. Fabricate cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened, according to referenced AISI's specifications and standards, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.
 - 1. Fabricate framing assemblies using jigs or templates.
 - 2. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 3. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting as standard with fabricator. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, with screw penetrating joined members by not less than three exposed screw threads.
 - 4. Fasten other materials to cold-formed metal framing by welding, bolting, or screw fastening, according to Shop Drawings.
- B. Reinforce, stiffen, and brace framing assemblies to withstand handling, delivery, and erection stresses. Lift fabricated assemblies to prevent damage or permanent distortion.
- C. Fabrication Tolerances: Fabricate assemblies level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet** and as follows:
 - 1. Spacing: Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.
 - 2. Squareness: Fabricate each cold-formed metal framing assembly to a maximum out-of-square tolerance of **1/8 inch**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine supporting substrates and abutting structural framing for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach continuous angles, supplementary framing, or tracks to structural members indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials.
- B. After applying sprayed fire-resistive materials, remove only as much of these materials as needed to complete installation of cold-formed framing without reducing thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required to obtain fire-resistance rating indicated. Protect remaining fire-resistive materials from damage.
- C. Install load bearing shims or grout between the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations to ensure a uniform bearing surface on supporting concrete or masonry construction.
- D. Install sealer gaskets to isolate the underside of wall bottom track or rim track and the top of foundation wall or slab at stud or joist locations.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cold-formed metal framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.
- B. Install cold-formed metal framing according to AISI's "Standard for Cold-Formed Steel Framing - General Provisions" and to manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.
- C. Install shop- or field-fabricated, cold-formed framing and securely anchor to supporting structure.
 - 1. Screw, bolt, or weld wall panels at horizontal and vertical junctures to produce flush, even, true-to-line joints with maximum variation in plane and true position between fabricated panels not exceeding **1/16 inch**.
- D. Install cold-formed metal framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.
 - 1. Cut framing members by sawing or shearing; do not torch cut.
 - 2. Fasten cold-formed metal framing members by welding, screw fastening, clinch fastening, or riveting. Wire tying of framing members is not permitted.
 - a. Comply with AWS D1.3 requirements and procedures for welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.
 - b. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to Shop Drawings, and complying with requirements for spacing, edge distances, and screw penetration.

- E. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.
- F. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads comparable in intensity to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.
- G. Do not bridge building expansion and control joints with cold-formed metal framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.
- H. Install insulation, specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation," in built-up exterior framing members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.
- I. Fasten hole reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's standard punched openings.
- J. Erection Tolerances: Install cold-formed metal framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of **1/8 inch in 10 feet** and as follows:
 - 1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus **1/8 inch** from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous top and bottom tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor at corners and ends.
- B. Squarely seat studs against top and bottom tracks with gap not exceeding of **1/8 inch** studs to top and bottom tracks.
 - 1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar configurations.
- D. Align studs vertically where floor framing interrupts wall-framing continuity. Where studs cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- E. Align floor and roof framing over studs. Where framing cannot be aligned, continuously reinforce track to transfer loads.
- F. Anchor studs abutting structural columns or walls, including masonry walls, to supporting structure as indicated.

- G. Install headers over wall openings wider than stud spacing. Locate headers above openings as indicated. Fabricate headers of compound shapes indicated or required to transfer load to supporting studs, complete with clip-angle connectors, web stiffeners, or gusset plates.
 - 1. Frame wall openings with not less than a double stud at each jamb of frame as indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten jamb members together to uniformly distribute loads.
 - 2. Install runner tracks and jack studs above and below wall openings. Anchor tracks to jamb studs with clip angles or by welding, and space jack studs same as full-height wall studs.
- H. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing in stud framing indicated to support fixtures, equipment, services, casework, heavy trim, furnishings, and similar work requiring attachment to framing.
 - 1. If type of supplementary support is not indicated, comply with stud manufacturer's written recommendations and industry standards in each case, considering weight or load resulting from item supported.
- I. Install horizontal bridging in stud system. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 - 1. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs with a minimum of 2 screws into each flange of the clip angle for framing members up to 6 inches deep.
 - 2. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 - 3. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- J. Install steel sheet diagonal bracing straps to both stud flanges, terminate at and fasten to reinforced top and bottom tracks. Fasten clip-angle connectors to multiple studs at ends of bracing and anchor to structure.
- K. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including supplementary framing, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.5 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

- A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure as indicated.
- B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track, unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: As indicated.
- C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.
- D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.
 1. Install single-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
 2. Install double deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor outer track to building structure.
 3. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
 4. Connect drift clips to cold formed metal framing and anchor to building structure.
- E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.
 1. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install a combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 2. Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
 3. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
 4. Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, fasteners, and stud girts, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.6 JOIST INSTALLATION

- A. Install perimeter joist track sized to match joists. Align and securely anchor or fasten track to supporting structure at corners, ends, and spacings indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Install joists bearing on supporting frame, level, straight, and plumb; adjust to final position, brace, and reinforce. Fasten joists to both flanges of joist track.
 1. Install joists over supporting frame with a minimum end bearing of 1-1/2 inches.
 2. Reinforce ends and bearing points of joists with web stiffeners, end clips, joist hangers, steel clip angles, or steel-stud sections as indicated on Shop Drawings.
- C. Space joists not more than 2 inches from abutting walls, and as follows:

1. Joist Spacing: As indicated.
- D. Frame openings with built-up joist headers consisting of joist and joist track, nesting joists, or another combination of connected joists if indicated.
- E. Install joist reinforcement at interior supports with single, short length of joist section located directly over interior support, with lapped joists of equal length to joist reinforcement, or as indicated on Shop Drawings.
 1. Install web stiffeners to transfer axial loads of walls above.
- F. Install bridging at intervals indicated on Shop Drawings. Fasten bridging at each joist intersection as follows:
 1. Bridging: Joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated, secured to joist webs.
 2. Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and joist-track solid blocking of width and thickness indicated. Fasten flat straps to bottom flange of joists and secure solid blocking to joist webs.
- G. Secure joists to load-bearing interior walls to prevent lateral movement of bottom flange.
- H. Install miscellaneous joist framing and connections, including web stiffeners, closure pieces, clip angles, continuous angles, hold-down angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable joist-framing assembly.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing: Owner will engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.
- C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.
- D. Remove and replace work where test results indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
- E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.8 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

- A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed metal framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780 and manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions, in a manner acceptable to manufacturer and Installer, that ensure that cold-formed metal framing is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 05500

METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
1. Steel framing and supports for operable partitions.
 2. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
 3. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
 4. Steel girders for supporting wood frame construction.
 5. Steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction.
 6. Prefabricated building columns.
 7. Loose bearing and leveling plates.
 8. Steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete not specified in other Sections.
 9. Structural-steel door frames.
 10. Miscellaneous steel trim.
 11. Metal bollards.
 12. Pipe guards.
 13. Metal downspout boots.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed, under this Section include the following:
1. Anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, and wedge-type inserts indicated to be cast into concrete or built into unit masonry.
- C. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for installing anchor bolts, steel pipe sleeves, wedge-type inserts and other items indicated to be cast into concrete.
 2. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel."
 3. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for metal framing anchors.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Thermal Movements: Provide exterior metal fabrications that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
1. Nonslip aggregates and nonslip-aggregate surface finishes.
 2. Prefabricated building columns.
 3. Metal nosings and treads.
 4. Paint products.
 5. Grout.
- B. LEED Submittal:
- C. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details for metal fabrications.
1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items.
 2. Provide templates for anchors and bolts specified for installation under other Sections.
 3. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
- D. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:
1. AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
 2. AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code--Aluminum."
 3. AWS D1.3, "Structural Welding Code--Sheet Steel."
 4. AWS D1.6, "Structural Welding Code--Stainless Steel."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.
 - 1. Established Dimensions: Where field measurements cannot be made without delaying the Work, establish dimensions and proceed with fabricating metal fabrications without field measurements. Coordinate wall and other contiguous construction to ensure that actual dimensions correspond to established dimensions.
 - 2. Provide allowance for trimming and fitting at site.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal fabrications. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.
- B. Coordinate installation of steel weld plates and angles for casting into concrete that are specified in this Section but required for work of another Section. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
 - 3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 - 4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces, unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

2.3 FERROUS METALS

- A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
- B. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, Plate, and Flat Bars: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
- C. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304.
- D. Rolled-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 786/A 786M, rolled from plate complying with ASTM A 36/A 36M or ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C or D.
- E. Rolled-Stainless-Steel Floor Plate: ASTM A 793.
- F. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500, cold-formed steel tubing.
- G. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, standard weight (Schedule 40), unless another weight is indicated or required by structural loads.
- H. Slotted Channel Framing: Cold-formed metal channels with continuous slot complying with MFMA-3.
- I. Cast Iron: ASTM A 48/A 48M, Class 30, unless another class is indicated or required by structural loads.

2.4 NONFERROUS METALS

- A. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: **ASTM B 209**, Alloy 6061-T6.
- B. Aluminum Extrusions: **ASTM B 221**, Alloy 6063-T6.
- C. Aluminum-Alloy Rolled Tread Plate: ASTM B 632/B 632M, Alloy 6061-T6.
- D. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, Alloy 443.0-F.
- E. Bronze Plate, Sheet, Strip, and Bars: ASTM B 36/B 36M, Alloy UNS No. C28000 (muntz metal, 60 percent copper).
- F. Bronze Extrusions: ASTM B 455, Alloy UNS No. C38500 (extruded architectural bronze).
- G. Bronze Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C83600 (leaded red brass) or No. C84400 (leaded semired brass).
- H. Nickel Silver Extrusions: ASTM B 151/B 151M, Alloy UNS No. C74500.
- I. Nickel Silver Castings: ASTM B 584, Alloy UNS No. C97600 (20 percent leaded nickel bronze).

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 304 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.
- B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, **ASTM A 307, Grade A**; with hex nuts, and, where indicated, flat washers.
- C. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36.
 - 1. Provide hot-dip or mechanically deposited, zinc-coated anchor bolts where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.
- D. Eyebolts: ASTM A 489.
- E. Machine Screws: **ASME B18.6.3**.
- F. Lag Bolts: **ASME B18.2.1**.
- G. Wood Screws: Flat head, ASME B18.6.1.
- H. Plain Washers: Round, **ASME B18.22.1**.
- I. Lock Washers: Helical, spring type, **ASME B18.21.1**.
- J. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to four times the load imposed, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Threaded or wedge type; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, hot-dip galvanized per ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- K. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.
 - 1. Material for Anchors in Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material for Anchors in Exterior Locations: Alloy Group **1** stainless-steel bolts complying with **ASTM F 593** and nuts complying with **ASTM F 594**.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select according to AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

- B. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Division 9 Painting Sections.
- C. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79.
 - 1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.
- D. Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with SSPC-Paint 20 or SSPC-Paint 29 and compatible with topcoat.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. Benjamin Moore & Co.; Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer CM18/19.
 - b. Carboline Company; Carbozinc 621.
 - c. ICI Devoe Coatings; Catha-Coat 313.
 - d. International Coatings Limited; Interzinc 315 Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer.
 - e. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.; Aquapon Zinc-Rich Primer 97-670.
 - f. Sherwin-Williams Company (The); Corothane I GalvaPac Zinc Primer.
 - g. Tnemec Company, Inc.; Tneme-Zinc 90-97.
- E. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint for regalanizing welds in steel, complying with SSPC-Paint 20.
- F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187.
- G. Nonshrink, Metallic Grout: Factory-packaged, ferrous-aggregate grout complying with ASTM C 1107, specifically recommended by manufacturer for heavy-duty loading applications.
- H. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.
- I. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi, unless otherwise indicated.

2.7 FABRICATION, GENERAL

- A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
- B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch, unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

- C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
- D. Form exposed work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.
- E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:
 - 1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 - 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 - 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 - 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts, unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
- G. Fabricate seams and other connections that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
- H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.
- I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.
 - 1. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, **1/8 by 1-1/2 inches**, with a minimum **6-inch** embedment and **2-inch** hook, not less than **8 inches** from ends and corners of units and **24 inches** o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.
- B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction, unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction retained by framing and supports. Cut, drill, and tap units to receive hardware, hangers, and similar items.
 - 1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
 - 2. Furnish inserts if units are installed after concrete is placed.

- C. Fabricate supports for operable partitions from continuous steel beams of sizes indicated with attached bearing plates, anchors, and braces as indicated. Drill bottom flanges of beams to receive partition track hanger rods; locate holes where indicated on operable partition Shop Drawings.
- D. Fabricate steel girders for wood frame construction from continuous steel shapes of sizes indicated.
 - 1. Provide bearing plates welded to beams where indicated.
 - 2. Drill girders and plates for field-bolted connections where indicated.
 - 3. Where wood nailers are attached to girders with bolts or lag screws, drill holes at **24 inches** o.c.
- E. Fabricate steel pipe columns for supporting wood frame construction from steel pipe with steel baseplates and top plates as indicated. Drill baseplates and top plates for anchor and connection bolts and weld to pipe with fillet welds all around. Make welds the same size as pipe wall thickness, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 1. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate from Schedule 40 steel pipe.
 - 2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide **1/2-inch** baseplates with four **5/8-inch** anchor bolts and **1/4-inch** top plates.
- F. Galvanize miscellaneous framing and supports where indicated.
- G. Prime miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer where indicated.

2.9 PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. General: Provide prefabricated building columns consisting of load-bearing structural-steel members protected by insulating concrete fireproofing encased in an outer non-load-bearing steel shell.
- B. Column Configuration: Provide columns of sizes and shapes indicated. Fabricate connections to comply with details shown or as needed to suit type of structure indicated.
 - 1. Concrete Fill: Manufacturer's standard structural concrete, with minimum compressive strength of **4200 psi**, machine mixed and mechanically vibrated during placement to produce concrete core free of voids.
- C. Available Manufacturers:
 - 1. Black Rock Column, Inc.
 - 2. Dean, George H., Inc.
 - 3. Firetrol Division; Dean Lally L. P.

2.10 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.
- B. Galvanize plates after fabrication.
- C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.11 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

- A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with not less than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.12 STRUCTURAL-STEEL DOOR FRAMES

- A. Fabricate structural-steel door frames from steel shapes, plates, and bars of size and to dimensions indicated, fully welded together, with **5/8-by-1-1/2-inch** steel channel stops, unless otherwise indicated. Plug-weld built-up members and continuously weld exposed joints. Secure removable stops to frame with countersunk machine screws, uniformly spaced at not more than **10 inches** o.c. Reinforce frames and drill and tap as necessary to accept finish hardware.
 - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for securing door frames into adjoining concrete or masonry.
- B. Extend bottom of frames to floor elevation indicated with steel angle clips welded to frames for anchoring frame to floor with expansion shields and bolts.
- C. Galvanize exterior steel frames.
- D. Prime interior steel frames with zinc-rich primer.

2.13 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

- A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.
- B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.
 - 1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.
- C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

- D. Prime interior miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

2.14 METAL BOLLARDS

- A. Fabricate metal bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe.

2.15 PIPE GUARDS

- A. Fabricate pipe guards from **3/8-inch** thick by **12-inch** wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with **2-inch** clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two **3/4-inch** anchor bolts.
- B. Galvanize pipe guards after fabrication.

2.16 METAL DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

- A. Provide downspout boots made from in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts.

2.17 FINISHES, GENERAL

- A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.
- B. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

2.18 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

- A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with applicable standard listed below:
 - 1. ASTM A 123/A 123M, for galvanizing steel and iron products.
 - 2. ASTM A 153/A 153M, for galvanizing steel and iron hardware.
- B. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with minimum requirements indicated below for SSPC surface preparation specifications and environmental exposure conditions of installed metal fabrications:
 - 1. Exteriors (SSPC Zone 1B) and Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
 - 2. Interiors (SSPC Zone 1A): SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."
- C. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal fabrications, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint

Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.19 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

- A. Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines or blend into finish.
- B. Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform, directionally textured, polished finish indicated, free of cross scratches. Run grain with long dimension of each piece.
- C. Bright, Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
- D. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
- E. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

2.20 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
- B. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M10 (Mechanical Finish: as fabricated, unspecified).
- C. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.
- B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
 2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
 3. Remove welding flux immediately.
 4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.
- D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag bolts, wood screws, and other connectors.
- E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.
- F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

- A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.
- B. Anchor supports for operable partitions securely to and rigidly brace from building structure.
- C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.
1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
- D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.
1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.3 INSTALLING PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

- A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC's "Specification for Structural Steel Buildings Allowable Stress Design and Plastic Design with Commentary" and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.

3.4 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

- A. Clean concrete and masonry bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen to improve bond to surfaces. Clean bottom surface of plates.
- B. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before packing with grout.
 - 1. Use nonshrink grout, either metallic or nonmetallic, in concealed locations where not exposed to moisture; use nonshrink, nonmetallic grout in exposed locations, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates to ensure that no voids remain.

3.5 INSTALLING NOSINGS, TREADS, AND THRESHOLDS

- A. Seal thresholds exposed to exterior with elastomeric sealant complying with Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide a watertight installation.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

- A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil dry film thickness.
- B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION

DIVISION 6

WOOD AND PLASTICS

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 06100

ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Framing with dimension lumber.
2. Wood blocking and nailers.
3. Wood furring and grounds.
4. Wood sleepers.
5. Utility shelving.
6. Plywood backing panels.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 2 Section "Termite Control" for site application of borate treatment to wood framing.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.
- B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal or greater but less than 5 inches nominal in least dimension.
- C. Timber: Lumber of 5 inches nominal or greater in least dimension.
- D. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:
 1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
 2. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
 3. RIS: Redwood Inspection Service.
 4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
 5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
 6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
 - 1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
 - 2. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
 - 3. Include copies of warranties from chemical treatment manufacturers for each type of treatment.
- B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.
- C. Material Certificates: For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
- D. Research/Evaluation Reports: For the following, showing compliance with building code in effect for Project:
 - 1. Wood-preservative-treated wood.
 - 2. Power-driven fasteners.
 - 3. Powder-actuated fasteners.
 - 4. Expansion anchors.
 - 5. Metal framing anchors.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Stack lumber flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

- A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, provide lumber that complies with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Provide lumber graded by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
2. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark grade stamp on end or back of each piece or omit grade stamp and provide certificates of grade compliance issued by grading agency.
3. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry lumber.
4. Provide dressed lumber, S4S, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED LUMBER

- A. Preservative Treatment by Pressure Process: AWPA C2, except that lumber that is not in contact with the ground and is continuously protected from liquid water may be treated according to AWPA C31 with inorganic boron SBX.
 1. Preservative Chemicals: Acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and containing no arsenic or chromium.
 2. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not require incising, contain colorants, bleed through, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- B. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.
- C. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
 1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
 1. Wood cants, nailers, curbs, equipment support bases, blocking, stripping, and similar members in connection with roofing, flashing, vapor barriers, and waterproofing.
 2. Wood sills, sleepers, blocking, furring, stripping, and similar concealed members in contact with masonry or concrete.
 3. Wood framing and furring attached directly to the interior of below-grade exterior masonry or concrete walls.
 4. Wood framing members that are less than 18 inches above the ground in crawlspaces or unexcavated areas.
 5. Wood floor plates that are installed over concrete slabs-on-grade.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

- A. General: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20 lumber and AWPA C27 plywood.

1. Use Exterior type for exterior locations and where indicated.
 2. Use Interior Type A, High Temperature (HT) for enclosed roof framing, framing in attic spaces, and where indicated.
 3. Use Interior Type A, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by inspection agency.
- C. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not bleed through, contain colorants, or otherwise adversely affect finishes.
- D. Application: Treat items indicated on Drawings, and the following:
1. Framing for raised platforms.
 2. Concealed blocking.
 3. Framing for non-load-bearing partitions.
 4. Framing for non-load-bearing exterior walls.
 5. Roof construction.
 6. Plywood backing panels.

2.4 DIMENSION LUMBER FRAMING

- A. Maximum Moisture Content: 15 percent for 2-inch nominal thickness or less, 19 percent for more than 2-inch nominal thickness.
- B. Joists, Rafters, and Other Framing Not Listed Above: No. 2, any of the following species:
1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Douglas fir-larch; WCLIB or WWPA.
 4. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 5. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 6. Douglas fir-south; WWPA.
 7. Hem-fir; WCLIB or WWPA.
 8. Douglas fir-larch (north); NLGA.
 9. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

- A. General: Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.

2. Nailers.
 3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
 4. Cants.
 5. Furring.
 6. Grounds.
 7. Utility shelving.
- B. For items of dimension lumber size, provide Construction or No. 2 grade lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species:
1. Hem-fir (north); NLGA.
 2. Mixed southern pine; SPIB.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir; NLGA.
 4. Hem-fir; WCLIB, or WWPA.
 5. Spruce-pine-fir (south); NeLMA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 6. Western woods; WCLIB or WWPA.
 7. Northern species; NLGA.
 8. Eastern softwoods; NeLMA.
- C. For exposed boards, provide lumber with 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Eastern white pine, Idaho white, lodgepole, ponderosa, or sugar pine; Premium or 2 grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 2. Mixed southern pine, No. 1 grade; SPIB.
 3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Select Merchantable or No. 1 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
- D. For concealed boards, provide lumber with 19 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine, No. 2 grade; SPIB.
 2. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir, Construction or 2 Common grade; NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
 3. Eastern softwoods, No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
 4. Western woods, Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.
- E. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.
- F. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.
- G. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.6 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

- A. Telephone and Electrical Equipment Backing Panels: DOC PS 1, Exposure 1, C-D Plugged, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.7 FASTENERS

- A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this Article for material and manufacture.
 - 1. Where rough carpentry is exposed to weather, in ground contact, pressure-preservative treated, or in area of high relative humidity, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A 153/A 153M or of Type 304 stainless steel.
- B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F 1667.
- C. Power-Driven Fasteners: NES NER-272.
- D. Wood Screws: ASME B18.6.1.
- E. Lag Bolts: ASME B18.2.1.
- F. Bolts: Steel bolts complying with ASTM A 307, Grade A ; with ASTM A 563 hex nuts and, where indicated, flat washers.
- G. Expansion Anchors: Anchor bolt and sleeve assembly of material indicated below with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to 6 times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry assemblies and equal to 4 times the load imposed when installed in concrete as determined by testing per ASTM E 488 conducted by a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency.
 - 1. Material: Carbon-steel components, zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5.
 - 2. Material: Stainless steel with bolts and nuts complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Alloy Group 1 or 2 .

2.8 METAL FRAMING ANCHORS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
- C. Basis-of-Design Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products indicated on Drawings or comparable products by one of the following:

1. Alpine Engineered Products, Inc.
 2. Cleveland Steel Specialty Co.
 3. Harlen Metal Products, Inc.
 4. KC Metals Products, Inc.
 5. Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.
 6. Southeastern Metals Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 7. USP Structural Connectors.
- D. Allowable Design Loads: Provide products with allowable design loads, as published by manufacturer, that meet or exceed those indicated or of products of manufacturers listed. Manufacturer's published values shall be determined from empirical data or by rational engineering analysis and demonstrated by comprehensive testing performed by a qualified independent testing agency.
- E. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Hot-dip, zinc-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.
1. Use for interior locations where stainless steel is not indicated.
- F. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 666, Type 304.
1. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
- G. Joist Hangers: U-shaped joist hangers with 2-inch- long seat and 1-1/4-inch- wide nailing flanges at least 85 percent of joist depth.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Glass-fiber-resilient insulation, fabricated in strip form, for use as a sill sealer; 1-inch nominal thickness, compressible to 1/32 inch; selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- B. Sill-Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to suit width of sill members indicated.
- C. Adhesives for Gluing Furring and Sleepers to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.
1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- D. Water-Repellent Preservative: NWWDA-tested and -accepted formulation containing 3-iodo-2-propynyl butyl carbamate, combined with an insecticide containing chloropyrifos as its active ingredient.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Set rough carpentry to required levels and lines, with members plumb, true to line, cut, and fitted. Fit rough carpentry to other construction; scribe and cope as needed for accurate fit. Locate furring, nailers, blocking, grounds, and similar supports to comply with requirements for attaching other construction.
- B. Framing Standard: Comply with AF&PA's "Details for Conventional Wood Frame Construction," unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Framing with Engineered Wood Products: Install engineered wood products to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- D. Metal Framing Anchors: Install metal framing to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Do not splice structural members between supports, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.
 - 1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than **16 inches** o.c.
- G. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics will not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.
- H. Comply with AWWA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.
 - 1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
 - 2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.
- I. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:
 - 1. NES NER-272 for power-driven fasteners.
 - 2. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code.
 - 3. Table 2305.2, "Fastening Schedule," in BOCA's BOCA National Building Code.
 - 4. Table 2306.1, "Fastening Schedule," in SBCCI's Standard Building Code.
- J. Use common wire nails, unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood; do not countersink nail heads, unless otherwise indicated.

- K. For exposed work, arrange fasteners in straight rows parallel with edges of members, with fasteners evenly spaced, and with adjacent rows staggered.
 - 1. Comply with approved fastener patterns where applicable.
 - 2. Use finishing nails, unless otherwise indicated. Countersink nail heads and fill holes with wood filler.

3.2 WOOD GROUND, SLEEPER, BLOCKING, AND NAILER INSTALLATION

- A. Install where indicated and where required for screeding or attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
- B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled lumber not less than **1-1/2 inches** wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 WOOD FURRING INSTALLATION

- A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.
- B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install **1-by-3-inch nominal-** size furring horizontally and vertically at **24 inches** o.c.
- C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install **1-by-2-inch nominal-**size furring vertically at **16 inches** o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.
- B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 06200

FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Finish carpentry items, other than shop prefabricated casework.
- B. Hardware and attachment accessories.

1.2 PRODUCTS FURNISHED BUT NOT INSTALLED UNDER THIS SECTION

- A. Section 04300 – Unit Masonry: Installation of attachment accessories.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 08211 - Flush Wood Doors.
- B. Reference to General Conditions.

1.4 REFERENCES

- A. ANSI A135.4 - Basic Hardboard.
- B. ANSI A208.1 - Mat Formed Wood Particleboard.
- C. ASTM E84 - Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials.
- D. AWI - Quality Standards.
- E. AWPA (American Wood Preservers Association) C2 - Lumber, Timbers, Bridge Ties and Mine Ties - Preservative Treatment by Pressure Processes.
- F. FS MMM-A-130 - Adhesive, Contact.
- G. HPMA (Hardwood Plywood Manufacturer's Association) HP - American Standard for Hardwood and Decorative Plywood.
- H. NEMA (National Electric Manufacturers Association) LD3 - High Pressure Decorative Laminates.
- I. NHLA (National Hardwood Lumber Association).
- J. NWWDA (National Wood Window and Door Association) I.S.4 - Water Repellant Preservative Treatment for Millwork.
- K. PS 1 - Construction and Industrial Plywood.
- L. PS 20 - American Softwood Lumber Standard.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Perform work in accordance with AWI Custom quality.

1.6 REGULATORY REQUIREMENTS

- A. Conform to applicable code for requirements.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver, store, protect and handle products to site under provisions of Section 01600.
- B. Protect work from moisture damage.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate work under provisions of Section 01039.
- B. Coordinate the work with rough-in, installation of associated and adjacent components.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 LUMBER MATERIALS

- A. Softwood Lumber: Graded in accordance with AWI Custom; Redwood species, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.
- B. Hardwood Lumber: Graded in accordance with AWI Custom; Birch species, sawn, maximum moisture content of 6 percent; with grain, of quality suitable for transparent finish.

2.2 SHEET MATERIALS

- A. Softwood Plywood: PS 1 Grade C-D; Graded in accordance with AWI Custom; veneer core.

2.3 PLASTIC LAMINATE MATERIALS

- A. Plastic Laminate: AWI, 0.030 inch commercial quality; color, pattern, and surface texture as selected.
- B. Laminate Backing Sheet: NEMA Id-3 BK20 backing grade, undecorated plastic laminate.

2.4 ADHESIVE

- A. Adhesive: FS MMM-A-130 contact adhesive. Type recommended by [AWI to suit application.

2.5 FASTENERS

- A. Fasteners: Of size and type to suit application; unfinished finish in concealed locations and painted finish in exposed locations.
- B. Concealed Joint Fasteners: Threaded steel.

2.6 ACCESSORIES

- A. Lumber for Shimming, Blocking, and Softwood lumber of S.Y.P. species.
- B. Wood Filler: Solvent base, tinted to match surface finish color.

2.7 FABRICATION

- A. When necessary to cut and fit on site, provide materials with ample allowance for cutting. Provide trim for scribing and site cutting.
- B. Apply plastic laminate finish in full-uninterrupted sheets consistent with manufactured sizes. Fit corners and joints hairline; secure with concealed fasteners. Locate counter butt joints minimum 2 feet (600 mm) from sink cutouts.
- C. Apply laminate backing sheet to reverse side of plastic laminate finished surfaces.

2.8 SHOP FINISHING

- A. Sand work smooth and set exposed nails and screws.
- B. Apply wood filler in exposed nail and screw indentations.
- C. On items to receive transparent finishes, use wood filler which matches surrounding surfaces and of types recommended for applied finishes.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Verify adequacy of backing and support framing.
- B. Verify mechanical, electrical, and building items affecting work of this section are placed and ready to receive this work.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install work in accordance with AWI Custom Quality Standard.
- B. Set and secure materials and components in place plumb and level.
- C. Carefully scribe work abutting other components, with maximum gaps of 1/32 inch (1 mm). Do not use additional overlay trim to conceal larger gaps.

3.3 PREPARATION FOR SITE FINISHING

- A. Site Finishing: Refer to Section 09900.
- B. Before installation, prime paint surfaces of items or assemblies to be in contact with cementitious materials.

3.4 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Maximum Variation from True Position: 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).
- B. Maximum Offset from True Alignment with Abutting Materials: 1/32 inch (0.7 mm).

END OF SECTION

DIVISION 7

THERMAL AND MOISTURE PROTECTION

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 07210

BUILDING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Cavity-wall insulation.
- 2. Concealed building insulation.
- 3. Loose-fill building insulation.
- 4. Self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
- 5. Vapor retarders.
- 6. Sound attenuation insulation.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 9 Section "Portland Cement Plaster" for installation in metal-framed assemblies of insulation specified by referencing this Section.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: Insulation composed of rock-wool fibers, slag-wool fibers, or glass fibers; produced in boards and blanket with latter formed into batts (flat-cut lengths) or rolls.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Plenum Rating: Provide glass-fiber insulation where indicated in ceiling plenums whose test performance is rated as follows for use in plenums as determined by testing identical products per "Erosion Test" and "Mold Growth and Humidity Test" described in UL 181, or on comparable tests from another standard acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- 1. Erosion Test Results: Insulation shows no visible evidence of cracking, flaking, peeling, or delamination of interior surface of duct assembly, after testing for 4 hours at 2500-fpm air velocity.

2. Mold Growth and Humidity Test Results: Insulation shows no evidence of mold growth, delamination, or other deterioration due to the effects of high humidity, after inoculation with *Chaetomium globosum* on all surfaces and storing for 60 days at 100 percent relative humidity in the dark.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of building insulation through one source from a single manufacturer.
- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide insulation and related materials with the fire-test-response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
 1. Surface-Burning Characteristics: ASTM E 84.
 2. Fire-Resistance Ratings: ASTM E 119.
 3. Combustion Characteristics: ASTM E 136.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.
- B. Protect plastic insulation as follows:
 1. Do not expose to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
 2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver plastic insulating materials to Project site before installation time.
 3. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.

2. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.

2.2 FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD INSULATION

- A. Extruded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexity indicated belowes of 75 and 450.
- B. Extruded-Polystyrene Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, and fabricated with one side having a matrix of drainage and edge channels.
- C. Molded-Polystyrene Board Insulation: ASTM C 578, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BOARD INSULATION

- A. Available Manufacturers:
 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 2. Johns Manville.
 3. Knauf Fiber Glass.
 4. Owens Corning.
- B. Unfaced, Flexible Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA; ASTM C 553, Types I, II, and III; or ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- D. Glass-Mat-Faced, Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: ASTM C 612, Type IA or Types IA and IB; faced on 1 side with black glass-fiber mat or black polymer finish; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively.

2.4 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION

- A. Available Manufacturers:
 1. CertainTeed Corporation.
 2. Guardian Fiberglass, Inc.
 3. Johns Manville.
 4. Knauf Fiber Glass.
 5. Owens Corning.

- B. Unfaced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.
- C. Faced, Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type III (blankets with reflective membrane facing), Class A (membrane-faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil-scrim-kraft, foil-scrim, or foil-scrim-polyethylene or polypropylene-scrim-kraft vapor-retarder membrane on 1 face.

2.5 LOOSE-FILL INSULATION

- A. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C 739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

2.6 SPRAY-APPLIED CELLULOSIC INSULATION

- A. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: ASTM C 1149, Type I (materials applied with liquid adhesive; suitable for either exposed or enclosed applications), or Type II (materials containing a dry adhesive activated by water during installation; intended only for enclosed or covered applications) chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristic.

2.7 VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D 4397, 6 mils thick, with maximum permeance rating of 0.13 perm.
- B. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: 2 outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than 25 lb/1000 sq. ft., with maximum permeance rating of 0.0507 perm.

1. Available Products:

- a. Raven Industries Inc.; DURA-SKRIM 6WW.
- b. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn T-65.
- C. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.
- D. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.
- E. Single-Component Nonsag Urethane Sealant: ASTM C 920, Type I, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT related to exposure, and Use O related to vapor-barrier-related substrates.

- F. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and with demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

2.8 AUXILIARY INSULATING MATERIALS

- A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by insulation manufacturers for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor-retarder facings.
- B. Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation and substrates.

2.9 INSULATION FASTENERS

- A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of thickness indicated securely in position indicated with self-locking washer in place; and complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; Series T TACTOO Insul-Hangers.
 - b. Eckel Industries of Canada; Stic-Klip Type N Fasteners.
 - c. Gemco; Spindle Type.
 - 2. Plate: Perforated galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
 - 3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
- B. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. AGM Industries, Inc.; RC150.
 - b. AGM Industries, Inc.; SC150.
 - c. Gemco; Dome-Cap.
 - d. Gemco; R-150.
 - e. Gemco; S-150.
 - 2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:
 - a. Crawlspace.
 - b. Ceiling plenums.
 - c. Attic spaces.
 - d. Where indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements of Sections in which substrates and related work are specified and for other conditions affecting performance.
 - 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean substrates of substances harmful to insulation or vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders or of interfering with insulation attachment.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and application indicated.
- B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed at any time to ice, rain, and snow.
- C. Extend insulation in thickness indicated to envelop entire area to be insulated. Cut and fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.
- D. Water-Piping Coordination: If water piping is located within insulated exterior walls, coordinate location of piping to ensure that it is placed on warm side of insulation and insulation encapsulates piping.
- E. For preformed insulating units, provide sizes to fit applications indicated and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units to produce thickness indicated unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF CAVITY-WALL INSULATION

- A. On units of foam-plastic board insulation, install pads of adhesive spaced approximately 24 inches o.c. both ways on inside face, and as recommended by manufacturer. Fit courses of insulation between wall ties and other obstructions, with edges butted tightly in both directions. Press units firmly against inside substrates indicated.

1. Supplement adhesive attachment of insulation by securing boards with two-piece wall ties designed for this purpose and specified in Division 4 Section "Unit Masonry Assemblies."

B. Install units of cellular-glass insulation with closely fitting joints using method indicated:

1. Gob Method: Apply 4 gobs of adhesive per unit and set units firmly against inside wythe of masonry or other construction as shown. Apply gobs at each corner; spread gobs to form pads 4 inches in diameter by 1/4 inch thick.
2. Serrated-Trowel Method: Apply adhesive to entire surface of each cellular-glass insulation unit with serrated trowel complying with insulation manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Coat edges of insulation units with full bed of adhesive to seal joints between insulation and between insulation and adjoining construction.
4. Coat exterior face (cold face) of installed cellular-glass block insulation course with asphalt coating.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GENERAL BUILDING INSULATION

- A. Apply insulation units to substrates by method indicated, complying with manufacturer's written instructions. If no specific method is indicated, bond units to substrate with adhesive or use mechanical anchorage to provide permanent placement and support of units.
- B. Seal joints between foam-plastic insulation units by applying adhesive, mastic, or sealant to edges of each unit to form a tight seal as units are shoved into place. Fill voids in completed installation with adhesive, mastic, or sealant as recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- C. Set vapor-retarder-faced units with vapor retarder in location indicated of construction, unless otherwise indicated.
1. Tape joints and ruptures in vapor retarder, and seal each continuous area of insulation to surrounding construction to ensure airtight installation.
- D. Install mineral-fiber insulation in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:
1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill cavity, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
 2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
 3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures.
 4. Install eave ventilation troughs between roof framing members in insulated attic spaces at vented eaves.
 5. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.

- E. Install board insulation in curtain-wall construction where indicated on Drawings according to curtain-wall manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Retain insulation in place by metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated between insulation and glass.
 - 2. Install insulation where it contacts perimeter fire-containment system to prevent insulation from bowing under pressure from perimeter fire-containment system.
- F. Apply self-supported, spray-applied cellulosic insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked. After insulation is applied, make it flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.
- G. Stuff glass-fiber loose-fill insulation into miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where shown. Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately **2.5 lb/cu. ft.**

3.6 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS

- A. General: Extend vapor retarder to extremities of areas to be protected from vapor transmission. Secure in place with adhesives or other anchorage system as indicated. Extend vapor retarder to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.
- B. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping not less than two wall studs. Fasten vapor retarders to wood framing at top, end, and bottom edges; at perimeter of wall openings; and at lap joints. Space fasteners **16 inches** o.c.
- C. Before installing vapor retarder, apply urethane sealant to flanges of metal framing including runner tracks, metal studs, and framing around door and window openings. Seal overlapping joints in vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Seal butt joints with vapor-retarder tape. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.
- D. Firmly attach vapor retarders to metal framing and solid substrates with vapor-retarder fasteners as recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer.
- E. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarder.
- F. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarder.

3.7 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed insulation and vapor retarders from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 07920

JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes joint sealants for the following applications, including those specified by reference to this Section:

1. Exterior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - a. Construction joints in cast-in-place concrete.
 - b. Joints in glass unit masonry assemblies.
 - c. Joints between metal panels.
 - d. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - e. Perimeter joints between materials listed above and frames of doors, windows and louvers.
 - f. Control and expansion joints.
 - g. Other joints as indicated.
2. Exterior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:
 - a. Isolation and contraction joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - c. Joints between different materials listed above.
 - d. Other joints as indicated.
3. Interior joints in the following vertical surfaces and horizontal nontraffic surfaces:
 - a. Control and expansion joints on exposed interior surfaces of exterior walls.
 - b. Perimeter joints of exterior openings where indicated.
 - c. Tile control and expansion joints.
 - d. Vertical joints on exposed surfaces of walls and partitions.
 - e. Perimeter joints between interior wall surfaces and frames of interior doors, windows.
 - f. Joints between plumbing fixtures and adjoining walls, floors, and counters.
 - g. Other joints as indicated.
4. Interior joints in the following horizontal traffic surfaces:

- a. Isolation joints in cast-in-place concrete slabs.
 - b. Control and expansion joints in tile flooring.
 - c. Other joints as indicated.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
1. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" for structural and other glazing sealants.
 2. Division 9 Section "Gypsum Board" for sealing perimeter joints of gypsum board partitions to reduce sound transmission.
 3. Division 9 Section "Resilient Floor Tile" for sealing tile joints.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Provide elastomeric joint sealants that establish and maintain watertight and airtight continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.
- B. Provide joint sealants for interior applications that establish and maintain airtight and water-resistant continuous joint seals without staining or deteriorating joint substrates.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each joint-sealant product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in ~~1/2-inch~~ wide joints formed between two ~~6-inch~~ long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of joint sealant and accessory, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. SWRI Validation Certificate: For each elastomeric sealant specified to be validated by SWRI's Sealant Validation Program.
- F. Preconstruction Field Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on preconstruction testing specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.
- G. Compatibility and Adhesion Test Reports: From sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:
 1. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
 2. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

- H. Field Test Report Log: For each elastomeric sealant application.
- I. Product Test Reports: Based on comprehensive testing of product formulations performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that sealants comply with requirements.
- J. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized Installer who is approved or licensed for installation of elastomeric sealants required for this Project.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of joint sealant through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Preconstruction Compatibility and Adhesion Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.
 - 1. Use ASTM C 1087 or manufacturer's standard test method to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
 - 2. Submit pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, joint-sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
 - 3. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
 - 4. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.
 - 5. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit joint preparation data that are based on previous testing of current sealant products for adhesion to, and compatibility with, joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.
- D. Product Testing: Obtain test results for "Product Test Reports" Paragraph in "Submittals" Article from a qualified testing agency based on testing current sealant formulations within a 36-month period preceding the commencement of the Work.
 - 1. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C 1021 to conduct the testing indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 548.
 - 2. Test elastomeric joint sealants for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920, and where applicable, to other standard test methods.
 - 3. Test elastomeric joint sealants according to SWRI's Sealant Validation Program for compliance with requirements specified by reference to ASTM C 920 for adhesion and cohesion under cyclic movement, adhesion-in-peel, and indentation hardness.
 - 4. Test other joint sealants for compliance with requirements indicated by referencing standard specifications and test methods.

- E. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing elastomeric sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:
1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
 2. Conduct field tests for each application indicated below:
 - a. Each type of elastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
 - b. Each type of nonelastomeric sealant and joint substrate indicated.
 3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
 4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.
 - a. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C 1193.
 - 1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 5. Report whether sealant in joint connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
 6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.
- F. Mockups: Build mockups incorporating sealant joints, as follows, to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution:
1. Joints in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive elastomeric joint sealants, which are specified by reference to this Section.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:
1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
 2. When joint substrates are wet.

3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer's standard form in which Installer agrees to repair or replace elastomeric joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which elastomeric sealant manufacturer agrees to furnish elastomeric joint sealants to repair or replace those that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.
 1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special warranties specified in this Article exclude deterioration or failure of elastomeric joint sealants from the following:
 1. Movement of the structure resulting in stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression caused by structural settlement or errors attributable to design or construction.
 2. Disintegration of joint substrates from natural causes exceeding design specifications.
 3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
 4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products listed in other Part 2 articles.

2.2 MATERIALS, GENERAL

- A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

- B. VOC Content of Interior Sealants: Provide sealants and sealant primers for use inside the weatherproofing system that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24):
 - 1. Architectural Sealants: 250 g/L.
 - 2. Nonmembrane Roof Sealants: 300 g/L.
 - 3. Single-Ply Roof Membrane Sealants: 450 g/L.
 - 4. Sealant Primers for Nonporous Substrates: 250 g/L.
 - 5. Sealant Primers for Porous Substrates: 775 g/L.
 - 6. Modified Bituminous Sealant Primers: 500 g/L.
- C. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS

- A. Elastomeric Sealants: Comply with ASTM C 920 and other requirements indicated for each liquid-applied chemically curing sealant specified, including those referencing ASTM C 920 classifications for type, grade, class, and uses related to exposure and joint substrates.
- B. Stain-Test-Response Characteristics: Where elastomeric sealants are specified to be nonstaining to porous substrates, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1248 and have not stained porous joint substrates indicated for Project.
- C. Suitability for Immersion in Liquids. Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for Use I for joints that will be continuously immersed in liquids, provide products that have undergone testing according to ASTM C 1247 and qualify for the length of exposure indicated by reference to ASTM C 920 for Class 1 or 2. Liquid used for testing sealants is deionized water, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Suitability for Contact with Food: Where elastomeric sealants are indicated for joints that will come in repeated contact with food, provide products that comply with 21 CFR 177.2600.
- E. Preformed Foam Sealant: Manufacturer's standard preformed, precompressed, open-cell foam sealant that is manufactured from high-density urethane foam impregnated with a nondrying, water-repellent agent; is factory produced in precompressed sizes in roll or stick form to fit joint widths indicated; is coated on one side with a pressure-sensitive adhesive and covered with protective wrapping; develops a watertight and airtight seal when compressed to the degree specified by manufacturer; and complies with the following:
 - 1. Available Products:
 - a. EMSEAL Joint Systems, Ltd.; Emseal 25V.
 - b. illbruck Sealant Systems, Inc.; Wilseal 600.
 - c. Polytime Manufacturing Corporation; Polytime B.

- d. Polytite Manufacturing Corporation; Polytite Standard.
 - e. Sandell Manufacturing Co., Inc.; Polyseal.
2. Properties: Permanently elastic, mildew resistant, nonmigratory, nonstaining, and compatible with joint substrates and other joint sealants.

2.4 PREFORMED TAPE SEALANTS

- A. Back-Bedding Mastic Tape Sealant: Preformed, butyl-based elastomeric tape sealant with a solids content of 100 percent; nonstaining and nonmigrating in contact with nonporous surfaces; with or without spacer rod as recommended in writing by tape manufacturers for application indicated; packaged on rolls with a release paper backing; and complying with ASTM C 1281 and AAMA 800 for products indicated below:
 1. AAMA 804.3 tape, where indicated.
 2. AAMA 806.3 tape, for applications in which tape is subject to continuous pressure.
 3. AAMA 807.3 tape, for applications in which tape is not subject to continuous pressure.
- B. Expanded Cellular Tape Sealant: Closed-cell, PVC foam tape sealant; factory coated with adhesive on both surfaces; packaged on rolls with release liner protecting adhesive; and complying with AAMA 800 for the following types:
 1. Type 1, for applications in which tape acts as the primary sealant.
 2. Type 2, for applications in which tape is used in combination with a full bead of liquid sealant.

2.5 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

- A. General: Provide sealant backings of material and type that are nonstaining; are compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and are approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.
- B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C 1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance:
- C. Elastomeric Tubing Sealant Backings: Neoprene, butyl, EPDM, or silicone tubing complying with ASTM D 1056, nonabsorbent to water and gas, and capable of remaining resilient at temperatures down to **minus 26 deg F**. Provide products with low compression set and of size and shape to provide a secondary seal, to control sealant depth, and to otherwise contribute to optimum sealant performance.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials

or joint surfaces at back of joint where such adhesion would result in sealant failure. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.
- B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.
- C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting joint-sealant performance.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:
 - 1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
 - 2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, blast cleaning, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Concrete.
 - b. Masonry.

- c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- 3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
- 4. Clean nonporous surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:
 - a. Metal.
 - b. Glass.
 - c. Porcelain enamel.
 - d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
- B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates , where recommended in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.
- C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

- A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.
- B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- C. Acoustical Sealant Application Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C 919 for use of joint sealants in acoustical applications as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.
- D. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
 - 1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
 - 2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
 - 3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application and replace them with dry materials.
- E. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.
- F. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
 2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
 3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.
- G. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.
1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
 2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
 3. Provide concave joint configuration per Figure 5A in ASTM C 1193, unless otherwise indicated.
 4. Provide flush joint configuration where indicated per Figure 5B in ASTM C 1193.
 5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated per Figure 5C in ASTM C 1193.
 - a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.
- H. Installation of Preformed Tapes: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- I. Installation of Preformed Silicone-Sealant System: Comply with the following requirements:
1. Apply masking tape to each side of joint, outside of area to be covered by sealant system.
 2. Apply silicone sealant to each side of joint to produce a bead of size complying with preformed silicone-sealant system manufacturer's written instructions and covering a bonding area of not less than **3/8 inch**. Hold edge of sealant bead **1/4 inch** inside masking tape.
 3. Within 10 minutes of sealant application, press silicone extrusion into sealant to wet extrusion and substrate. Use a roller to apply consistent pressure and ensure uniform contact between sealant and both extrusion and substrate.
 4. Complete installation of sealant system in horizontal joints before installing in vertical joints. Lap vertical joints over horizontal joints. At ends of joints, cut silicone extrusion with a razor knife.
- J. Installation of Preformed Foam Sealants: Install each length of sealant immediately after removing protective wrapping, taking care not to pull or stretch material, producing seal continuity at ends, turns, and intersections of joints. For applications at low ambient temperatures where expansion of sealant requires acceleration to produce seal, apply heat to sealant in compliance with sealant manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:
1. Extent of Testing: Test completed elastomeric sealant joints as follows:
 - a. Perform 1 test for each 1000 feet of joint length thereafter or 1 test per each floor per elevation.
 2. Test Method: Test joint sealants according to as appropriate for type of joint-sealant application indicated.
 - a. For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; do this by extending cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.
 3. Inspect joints for complete fill, for absence of voids, and for joint configuration complying with specified requirements. Record results in a field-adhesion-test log.
 4. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:
 - a. Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each type of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion passes sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.
 - b. Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
 - c. Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
 5. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant fill, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.
 6. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.
- B. Evaluation of Field Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

3.5 CLEANING

- A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION

DIVISION 8

DOORS AND WINDOWS

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 08411

ALUMINUM FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Exterior storefront framing.
- 2. Exterior and interior manual-swing entrance doors and door-frame units.

- B. Related Sections:

- 1. Division 8 Section "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls" for curtain-wall systems that mechanically retain glazing on four sides.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. ADA/ABA Accessibility Guidelines: U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's "Americans with Disability Act (ADA) and Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities."

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. General Performance: Aluminum-framed systems shall withstand the effects of the following performance requirements without exceeding performance criteria or failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction:

- 1. Movements of supporting structure indicated on Drawings including, but not limited to, story drift and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
- 2. Dimensional tolerances of building frame and other adjacent construction.
- 3. Failure includes the following:
 - a. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - b. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.

- c. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movements to glazing.
 - d. Glazing-to-glazing contact.
 - e. Noise or vibration created by wind and by thermal and structural movements.
 - f. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
 - g. Sealant failure.
 - h. Failure of operating units.

- B. Delegated Design: Design aluminum-framed systems, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

- C. Structural Loads:
 - 1. Wind Loads:
 - a. Basic Wind Speed: 137 mph.
 - b. Importance Factor: Category II.
 - c. Exposure Category: B.

 - 2. Seismic Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

- D. Deflection of Framing Members:
 - 1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane shall not exceed L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite.
 - 2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to L/360 of clear span or 1/8 inch (3.2 mm), whichever is smaller.

- E. Structural-Test Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems tested according to ASTM E 330 as follows:
 - 1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems do not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.
 - 2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, systems, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
 - 3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not fewer than 10 seconds.

- F. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistance Performance: Provide aluminum-framed systems that pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996.
 - 1. Large-Missile Impact: For aluminum-framed systems located within 30 feet of grade.

2. Small-Missile Impact: For aluminum-framed systems located more than 30 feet above grade.
- G. Air Infiltration: Provide aluminum-framed systems with maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft.
 - H. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 - I. Water Penetration under Dynamic Pressure: Provide aluminum-framed systems that do not evidence water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to AAMA 501.1 under dynamic pressure equal to 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
 1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating aluminum-framed systems or water appearing on systems' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior and water that cannot damage adjacent materials or finishes.
 - J. Thermal Movements: Provide aluminum-framed systems that allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures. Base engineering calculation on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.
 1. Temperature Change (Range): 180 deg F , material surfaces.
 2. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.
 - a. High Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: That which produces an exterior metal-surface temperature of 180 deg F.
 - b. Low Exterior Ambient-Air Temperature: 0 deg F .
 3. Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F .
 - K. Condensation Resistance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having condensation-resistance factor (CRF) of not less than 45 when tested according to AAMA 1503.
 - L. Thermal Conductance: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having an average U-factor of not more than 0.57 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F when tested according to AAMA 1503.
 - M. Sound Transmission: Provide aluminum-framed systems with fixed glazing and framing areas having the following sound-transmission characteristics:

1. Sound Transmission Class (STC): Minimum 26 STC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 413.
 2. Outdoor-Indoor Transmission Class (OITC): Minimum 26 OITC when tested for laboratory sound transmission loss according to ASTM E 90 and determined by ASTM E 1332.
- N. Structural Sealant: Capable of withstanding tensile and shear stresses imposed by aluminum-framed systems without failing adhesively or cohesively. When tested for preconstruction adhesion and compatibility, cohesive failure of sealant shall occur before adhesive failure.
1. Adhesive failure occurs when sealant pulls away from substrate cleanly, leaving no sealant material behind.
 2. Cohesive failure occurs when sealant breaks or tears within itself but does not separate from each substrate because sealant-to-substrate bond strength exceeds sealant's internal strength.
- O. Structural-Sealant Joints: Designed to produce tensile or shear stress of less than 20 psi.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for aluminum-framed systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum-framed systems. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Include details of provisions for system expansion and contraction and for drainage of moisture in the system to the exterior.
 2. For entrance doors, include hardware schedule and indicate operating hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
- E. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of aluminum-framed systems, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
 2. Anchorage.
 3. Expansion provisions.
 4. Glazing.
 5. Flashing and drainage.

F. Other Action Submittals:

1. Entrance Door Hardware Schedule: Prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, detailing fabrication and assembly of entrance door hardware, as well as procedures and diagrams. Coordinate final entrance door hardware schedule with doors, frames, and related work to ensure proper size, thickness, hand, function, and finish of entrance door hardware.

G. Delegated-Design Submittal: For aluminum-framed systems indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Detail fabrication and assembly of aluminum-framed systems.
2. Include design calculations.

H. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.

I. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For aluminum-framed systems, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

J. Welding certificates.

K. Preconstruction Test Reports: For sealant.

L. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for aluminum-framed systems, indicating compliance with performance requirements.

M. Source quality-control reports.

N. Quality-Control Program for Structural-Sealant-Glazed System: Include reports.

O. Field quality-control reports.

P. Maintenance Data: For aluminum-framed systems to include in maintenance manuals.

Q. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

- C. Engineering Responsibility: Prepare data for aluminum-framed systems, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in systems similar to those indicated for this Project.
- D. Quality-Control Program for Structural-Sealant-Glazed System: Develop quality control program specifically for Project. Document quality-control procedures and verify results for aluminum-framed systems. Comply with ASTM C 1401 recommendations including, but not limited to, system material-qualification procedures, preconstruction sealant-testing program, procedures for system fabrication and installation, and intervals of reviews and checks.
- E. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for systems' aesthetic effects and performance characteristics. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction. Performance characteristics are indicated by criteria subject to verification by one or more methods including preconstruction testing, field testing, and in-service performance.
 - 1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive explanatory data to Architect for review.
- F. Preconstruction Sealant Testing: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, perform sealant manufacturer's standard tests for compatibility with and adhesion of each material that will come in contact with sealants and each condition required by aluminum-framed systems.
 - 1. Test a minimum five samples each of metal, glazing, and other material.
 - 2. Prepare samples using techniques and primers required for installed systems.
 - 3. For materials that fail tests, determine corrective measures necessary to prepare each material to ensure compatibility with and adhesion of sealants including, but not limited to, specially formulated primers. After performing these corrective measures on the minimum number of samples required for each material, retest materials.
- G. Accessible Entrances: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines.
- H. Source Limitations for Aluminum-Framed Systems: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.
- I. Structural-Sealant Glazing: Comply with ASTM C 1401, "Guide for Structural Sealant Glazing" for design and installation of structural-sealant-glazed systems.
- J. Structural-Sealant Joints: Design reviewed and approved by structural-sealant manufacturer.
- K. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.2, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

- L. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
 - 1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
 - 2. Field testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
 - 3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
 - 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- M. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.
- N. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for aluminum-framed systems by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of aluminum-framed systems that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
 - b. Noise or vibration caused by thermal movements.
 - c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.
 - d. Adhesive or cohesive sealant failures.
 - e. Water leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas.
 - f. Failure of operating components.
 - 2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

- A. Entrance Door Hardware:
 - 1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
 - 2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide twelve months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide

parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

B. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Systems:

1. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of structural-sealant-glazed system Installer. Include preventive maintenance, repair or replacement to ensure long-term performance and durability of structural-sealant-glazed system as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original system.
2. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, [provide products by one of the following] [available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following]:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 1. United States Aluminum.
 2. Southern Walls.
 3. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

- A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
 1. Sheet and Plate: **ASTM B 209**.
 2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: **ASTM B 221**.
 3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
 4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
 5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.
- B. Steel Reinforcement: Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer, complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to

recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING SYSTEMS

- A. Framing Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.
- B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.
- C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.
- D. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts, complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M.
- E. Concealed Flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials.
- F. Framing System Gaskets and Sealants: Manufacturer's standard, recommended by manufacturer for joint type.
 1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 GLAZING SYSTEMS

- A. Glazing: As specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."
- B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard compression types; replaceable, molded or extruded, of profile and hardness required to maintain watertight seal.
- C. Spacers and Setting Blocks: Manufacturer's standard elastomeric type.
- D. Bond-Breaker Tape: Manufacturer's standard TFE-fluorocarbon or polyethylene material to which sealants will not develop adhesion.
- E. Glazing Sealants: For structural-sealant-glazed systems, as recommended by manufacturer for joint type, and as follows:
 1. Structural Sealant: ASTM C 1184, single-component neutral-curing silicone formulation that is compatible with system components with which it comes in

contact, specifically formulated and tested for use as structural sealant and approved by a structural-sealant manufacturer for use in aluminum-framed systems indicated.

- a. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 100 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of colors.
2. Weatherseal Sealant: ASTM C 920 for Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses NT, G, A, and O; single-component neutral-curing formulation that is compatible with structural sealant and other system components with which it comes in contact; recommended by structural-sealant, weatherseal-sealant, and aluminum-framed-system manufacturers for this use.
- a. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
 - b. Color: Matching structural sealant.

2.5 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

- A. Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.
1. Door Construction: 1-3/4-inch overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch thick, extruded-aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are deeply penetrated and fillet welded or that incorporate concealed tie rods.
 2. Door Design: As indicated.
 - a. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 10 inches above floor or ground plane.
 3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.
 - a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.
- B. Entrance Door Hardware: As specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."

2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

- A. General: Provide entrance door hardware and entrance door hardware sets indicated in door and frame schedule for each entrance door to comply with requirements in this Section.

1. Entrance Door Hardware Sets: Provide quantity, item, size, finish or color indicated.
 2. Sequence of Operation: Provide electrified door hardware function, sequence of operation, and interface with other building control systems indicated.
 3. Opening-Force Requirements:
 - a. Egress Doors: Not more than 15 lbf to release the latch and not more than 30 lbf to set the door in motion and not more than 15 lbf to open the door to its minimum required width.
 - b. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf to fully open door.
- B. Designations: Requirements for design, grade, function, finish, size, and other distinctive qualities of each type of entrance door hardware are indicated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article. Products are identified by using entrance door hardware designations as follows:
1. Named Manufacturers' Products: Manufacturer and product designation are listed for each door hardware type required for the purpose of establishing minimum requirements. Manufacturers' names are abbreviated in "Entrance Door Hardware Sets" Article.
 2. References to BHMA Standards: Provide products complying with these standards and requirements for description, quality, and function.
- C. Opening-Force Requirements:
1. Latches and Exit Devices: Not more than 15 lbf required to release latch.
- D. Panic Exit Devices: BHMA A156.3, Grade 1, listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305.
- E. Cylinders: As specified in Division 8 Section "Door Hardware."
- F. Strikes: Provide strike with black-plastic dust box for each latch or lock bolt; fabricated for aluminum framing.
- G. Operating Trim: BHMA A156.6.
- H. Removable Mullions: BHMA A156.3, extruded aluminum.
1. When used with panic exit devices, provide removable mullions listed and labeled by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, for panic protection, based on testing according to UL 305. Use only mullions that have been tested with exit devices to be used.
- I. Closers: BHMA A156.4, Grade 1, with accessories required for a complete installation, sized as required by door size, exposure to weather, and anticipated frequency of use; adjustable to meet field conditions and requirements for opening force.

- J. Surface-Mounted Holders: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- K. Door Stops: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1, floor or wall mounted, as appropriate for door location indicated, with integral rubber bumper.
- L. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.
 - 1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
 - 2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.
- M. Weather Sweeps: Manufacturer's standard exterior-door bottom sweep with concealed fasteners on mounting strip.
- N. Silencers: BHMA A156.16, Grade 1.
- O. Thresholds: BHMA A156.21, raised thresholds beveled with a slope of not more than 1:2, with maximum height of **1/2 inch**.
- P. Finger Guards: Manufacturer's standard collapsible neoprene or PVC gasket anchored to frame hinge-jamb at center-pivoted doors.

2.7 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

- A. Joint Sealants: For installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems, as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Provide sealants for use inside of the weatherproofing system that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos; formulated for **30-mil** thickness per coat.

2.8 FABRICATION

- A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.
- B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
- C. Framing Members, General: Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:
 - 1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
 - 2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.

3. Means to drain water passing joints, condensation within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.
 4. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.
 5. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
 6. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing or metal panels.
 7. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.
- D. Mechanically Glazed Framing Members: Fabricate for flush glazing without projecting stops.
- E. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Framing Members: Include accommodations for using temporary support device to retain glazing in place while structural sealant cures.
- F. Entrance Door Frames: Reinforce as required to support loads imposed by door operation and for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At exterior doors, provide compression weather stripping at fixed stops.
 2. At interior doors, provide silencers at stops to prevent metal-to-metal contact. Install three silencers on strike jamb of single-door frames and two silencers on head of frames for pairs of doors.
- G. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.
1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
 2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.
- H. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.
- I. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.9 ALUMINUM FINISHES

- A. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA #22.
1. Color: Medium bronze to match existing.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Structural-Sealant-Glazed Systems: Perform quality-control procedures complying with ASTM C 1401 recommendations, including, but not limited to, system material-qualification procedures, sealant testing, and system fabrication reviews and checks.

- B. Structural-sealant-glazed system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.
- C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration.
6. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or applying sealant or tape, or by installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within the system to exterior.

D. Set continuous sill members and flashing in full sealant bed as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

E. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades, and without warp or rack.

F. Install glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing."

1. Structural-Sealant Glazing:

- a. Prepare surfaces that will contact structural sealant according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to ensure compatibility and adhesion. Preparation includes, but is not limited to, cleaning and priming surfaces.
 - b. Install weatherseal sealant according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.
- G. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.
1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
 2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
- H. Install perimeter joint sealants as specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" to produce weathertight installation.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

- A. Install aluminum-framed systems to comply with the following maximum erection tolerances:
1. Location and Plane: Limit variation from true location and plane to **1/8 inch in 12 feet** over total length.
 2. Alignment:
 - a. Where surfaces abut in line, limit offset from true alignment to **1/16 inch**.
 - b. Where surfaces meet at corners, limit offset from true alignment to **1/32 inch**.
- B. Diagonal Measurements: Limit difference between diagonal measurements to **1/8 inch**.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows and in successive phases as indicated on Drawings. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.
1. Structural-Sealant Compatibility and Adhesion: Structural sealant shall be tested according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401.

2. Structural-Sealant Glazing Inspection: After installation of aluminum-framed systems is complete, structural-sealant glazing shall be inspected and evaluated according to recommendations in ASTM C 1401.
 - B. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.
 - C. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
 - D. Aluminum-framed assemblies will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
 - E. Prepare test and inspection reports.
- 3.5 ADJUSTING
- A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.
 1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

END OF DOCUMENT

HORTON AUTOMATICS - ARCHITECTURAL SPECIFICATIONS, 1/2008

ProSlide® Series 2003

Aluminum Sliding Door System with Electric Belt Drive Operator

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION 08 42 29.23 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

Specifier Note: Coordinate and edit articles and paragraphs below to suit project requirements. Add section numbers and titles per CSI "MasterFormat" and specifier's practice. Consult with manufacturer regarding performance requirements for units applicable to project, as well as, related equipment and accessories required.

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. WORK INCLUDED: Furnish complete automatic aluminum door system, as specified, that has been manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage or failure.
- B. RELATED WORK:
 - 1. Concrete: Division 03, applicable sections.
 - 2. Masonry: Division 04, applicable sections.
 - 3. Thermal and Moisture Protection: Division 07, applicable sections.
 - 5. Openings: Division 08, applicable sections.
 - 6. Electrical: Division 26, applicable sections.

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA) 101: Appendix Dissimilar Materials.
- B. AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF AUTOMATIC DOOR MANUFACTURERS (AAADM).
- C. AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI Z97.1: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Methods of Test.
 - 2. ANSI A156.10: For Power Operated Pedestrian Doors; Sliding Doors section.
- D. AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM) B221: Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes and Tubes.
- E. NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA) 101: Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings & Structures.
- F. THE ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA) Aluminum Finishes Manual.
- G. UNDERWRITERS LABORATORY, INC.(USA & CANADA) UL 325: Electrical Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. PRODUCT DATA: Submit manufacturer's complete product and installation data.
- B. SHOP DRAWINGS: Submit drawings showing layout, profiles, product components including anchorage, accessories, finish and glazing details (where required).
- C. QUALITY ASSURANCE AND CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS: Submit the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's Operation and Maintenance Data.
 - 2. Warranty document as specified herein.

3. AAADM inspection compliance form completed and signed by certified AAADM inspector prior to doors being placed in operation as proof of compliance with ANSI A156.10.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **INSTALLERS QUALIFICATIONS:** Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section.
- B. **MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS:** Manufacturer to have minimum (5) five years successful experience in the fabrication of automatic doors of the type required for this project. Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during installation, approving acceptable installer and approving application method.

1.05 WARRANTIES

- A. **MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY:** Units to be warranted against defect in material and workmanship for a period of one year from the Date of Substantial Completion. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights owner may have under Contract Documents.
- B. **DISTRIBUTOR'S WARRANTY:** One year warranty: Labor & transportation charges for defective parts replacement.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

FIELD MEASUREMENTS: Verify actual dimensions/openings by field measurements before fabrication and record on shop drawings. Coordinate with fabrication and construction schedule to avoid construction delays.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. **ORDERING AND DELIVERY:** Comply with factory's ordering instructions and lead time requirements. Delivery shall be in factory's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. **STORAGE AND PROTECTION:** Provide protection from exposure to harmful weather conditions and vandalism.

PART II – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

HORTON AUTOMATICS, a division of Overhead Door Corporation, shall manufacture automatic sliding door(s) of type(s) and size(s) specified on plans and door schedule.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. **MANUFACTURED DOOR UNITS:** Shall include operator, header and track, jambs, sliding door panel(s), and sidelite(s). Units can be perimeter mounted within rough opening with sliding panel(s) sliding along sidelite. Units can also be surface mounted with sliding panel(s) sliding along wall eliminating need for sidelite. Units will be either single-slide or bipart and will be one of the following unit types:
 1. Type 010: Sliding panel(s) 'X' shall slide along interior side.
 2. Type 110: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' shall slide along exterior side.
 3. Type 310: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' shall slide along interior side. Unit has Swing-out sidelite 'SO'.
 4. Type 410: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' shall slide between fixed and swing-out sidelite 'O/SO'.
 5. SpaceSaver™: Dual single slide units with common sidelite. Slide-swing panel 'SX' shall slide along exterior side of middle sidelite 'O' from one direction and sliding panel 'X' shall slide along interior side from opposite direction.
- B. **OPERATOR:** The Electric Operating Mechanism shall be ProSlide® Series 2003 Belt Drive. Maximum current draw shall not exceed 3.15 amps. The operator shall be mounted and concealed within the header.
 1. Operating force shall be accomplished through a 1/8 HP DC permanent magnet motor with worm gear transmission and 1800 RPM working with drive belt, attached door hangers, and idler pulley. Drive belt to be steel reinforced nylon, 3/4" (19 mm) wide. Idler pulley to be reinforced, metallic material.

2. Microprocessor Master Control shall have Version 2 software and have dual on-board seven-segment diagnostic display. The control shall have minimum of 28 programmable parameters including those functions required by ANSI A156.10. Control shall include separate day and night modes of operation with security over-ride. Adjustable Reversing Circuit will reopen door unit if closing path is obstructed. Maximum force required to prevent sliding panel from closing = 28 lbf.
3. Finger Safety: When unit slides open, strike rail of sliding panel will stop short of adjacent sidelite; resulting opening is net slide.
4. On/Off Switch shall be supplied. When switched OFF, unit reverts to free manual operation (likewise during electrical power failure).

C. SECURITY AND SAFETY POWER FAIL OPTIONS:

1. Automatic lock: Automatically locks slide function of door when in closed position. Additional power supply for autolock not acceptable.
 - a. Autolock Fail Secure: If power fails the lock engages.
 - b. Autolock Fail Safe: If power fails the lock disengages.
2. Monitored Power Fail Options (battery back-up):
 - a. Software Selectable Power Fail Open: If power fails the door slides open.
 - b. Software Selectable Power Fail Close: If power fails the door slides closed.

D. PROSLIDE® HEADER: Shall be 6" (152 mm) deep by 6" (152 mm) high aluminum construction with removable face plate. SpaceSaver™ headers shall be combined depth of 12" (306) with removable face plate for each.

E. HEADER TRACK: Shall be aluminum and replaceable. Rollers will be non-metallic, high quality ball bearing wheels 2" (51 mm) diameter. Anti-Derailing shall be accomplished by means of a separate adjustable roller.

F. SLIDING PANEL(S) AND SIDELITE(S): Shall be aluminum, 1-3/4" (44 mm) deep with narrow stile rails. An intermediate, horizontal rail (muntin bar), 2 1/4" (57 mm) wide, shall be furnished for safety and division of glass (optional on 010 units). Standard bottom rail shall be 4" (102mm) tall. Weather-stripping to be along perimeter of sliding panel(s) and swing-out sidelite(s). Concealed guides to stabilize bottom of sliding panel. Standard glazing prep to be for 1/4" (6 mm) glass.

1. Total weight limit per panel shall be:
 - a. 250 lbs. (113.4 kg) for slide panel (non-breakout)
 - b. 156 lbs. (70.7 kg) for UL listed slide-swing panel
2. Sliding Panel and Sidelite Options shall be:
 - a. Medium stile construction: 3 3/4" (95mm) wide vertical rails with 6 1/2" (165mm) tall bottom rail. Note: Medium stile construction will reduce slide opening.
 - b. Wide stile construction: 5" (127mm) wide vertical rails with 6 1/2" (165mm) tall bottom rail. Note: Wide stile construction will reduce slide opening.
 - c. Surface applied push bar 1 1/2" (32mm) wide in lieu of standard muntin bar.
 - d. Custom horizontal muntins from 1/2" (13mm) to 10" (254mm) wide.
 - e. Custom bottom rails up to 10" (254mm) tall.
 - f. Additional and/or extra wide sidelites of size and type indicated.
 - g. Recessed sidelite and track and non-threshold application.
 - h. Prep for glazing 5/16" (16mm) to 1" (25mm).

G. EMERGENCY EGRESS: Slide-swing panels can swing out 90° from any position of slide movement and require no more than 50 lbf. (222 N) of force applied at the lock stile to open.

1. Slide-swing panels and swing-out sidelites shall have torsion spring designed to re-close panel if pushed open in the direction of egress.
2. Breakout mechanism shall provide support across full width of the door, in normal operating mode. In breakout mode, torsion assembly shall support weight of the door to minimize drop during emergency egress.
3. Slide-swing panels shall include intermediate horizontal rail.
4. Units with emergency egress feature are UL listed as an exit way and are compliant with NFPA 101.

H. JAMBS/FRAME: Shall be aluminum. Jamb dimensions to be:

1. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 4" (102mm) wide for Types 010, 110, & 310. Optional jambs include:

- a. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 4 1/2" (114mm) wide.
 - b. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 - b. 2" (51mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 - c. 4" (102mm) square. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 - 2. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide for Type 410.
 - 3. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 8" (152mm) wide for SpaceSaver™.
 - 4. Frame Option: Transom of size and type indicated, mounted on header
- I. THRESHOLD: Shall be aluminum, 1/2" (25 mm) tall by 4" (102 mm) wide. Optional 7" (178 mm) wide.
- J. HARDWARE: Provided and installed in strike rail shall be:
- 1. Hookbolt Lock latching into jamb or adjacent strike rail.
 - 2. Maximum Security Lock with 31/32" (25 mm) backset.
 - 3. Keyed Cylinder mounted on exterior side with 1 5/32" (29 mm) standard size cylinder.
 - 4. Thumbturn mounted on interior side.
 - 5. Lockbolt into breakout carrier frame.
 - 6. Hardware Options:
 - a. Lockbolt into breakout carrier frame without hookbolt.
 - b. Lock Indicator.
 - c. Cylinder Guard.
 - d. Cylinder Escutcheon.
 - e. Surface mounted Panic Exit Device: (door type 310 only).
 - f. Flush Panic Exit Device (door type 110 and 310): Recessed in muntin bar.

2.03 RELATED EQUIPMENT

BASIC SENSOR SYSTEM: Shall be 24 VDC, class II circuit and shall be adjusted and installed in compliance with ANSI A156.10. System shall include the following:

- A. ACTIVATION SENSORS: Microwave or active infrared sensor shall be header-mounted each side of door unit for detection of traffic from each direction.
- B. THRESHOLD PRESENCE SENSORS:
 - 1. Header mounted sensors shall provide active infrared presence detection on each side of the door unit and shall remain active throughout the entire door opening and closing cycle.
 - 2. Hold-open beams: Two pulsed infrared photoelectric beams to be mounted in vertical rails of sidelite or in jambs. Sender/receiver arrangement parallels door opening.

2.04 RELATED WORK REQUIREMENTS

- A. ELECTRICAL: 120 VAC, 50/60 cycle, single phase, dedicated 20 amp circuit per operator. Non-North American voltages can be 240 VAC 50/60 cycle (operator must have 240 volt power supply).
- B. GLASS AND GLAZING: Glass stops, glazing vinyl and setting blocks for field glazing as per Safety Glazing standard ANSI Z97.1.2. Contractor to coordinate acquisition of glass in thickness and type in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for prescribed design.

2.05 MATERIALS, FINISHES AND FABRICATION

- A. EXTRUDED ALUMINUM: ASTM B221, 6063-T5 alloy and temper, anodized:
 - 1. Structural Header Sections: Minimum 3/16" (5 mm) thickness.
 - 2. Structural Frame Sections: Minimum 1/8" (3 mm) thickness.
 - 3. Structural Panel Sections: Commercial grade.
- B. FINISHES (for all exposed aluminum surfaces): Shall be one of the following:
 - 1. 204-R1 Clear: Arch. Class 2 Clear Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A31.

2. 313-R1 Dark Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
3. 312-R1 Light Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
4. 315-R1 Black: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
5. Special Paint Coating: Color as selected.
6. Clad with stainless steel or muntz metal (brass alloy): #7 mirror finish or #4 brushed finish.

C. PANEL CONSTRUCTION:

1. Corner block type with 3/16" steel backup plate construction, mechanically secured with minimum of four hardened steel screws. Sash consists of snap-in glass stops, snap-in glazing beads and vinyl gaskets.
2. Weatherstripping material captured in extruded aluminum door panel. Door nosing weatherstrip to be spring-loaded adjustable astragal type. Surface applied self-adhesive weatherstripping not acceptable.
3. Slide-swing doors to be supplied with adjustable glass setting block to allow for adjusting of door to meet site conditions eliminating the need for additional shims.

D. FRAME CONSTRUCTION: Butt joints, mechanically secured with screws and formed alum. corner brackets.

E. OPERATOR CONSTRUCTION: Electromechanical, modular type construction.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

SITE VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS: Installer must verify that base conditions previously installed under other sections are acceptable for product installation according to with manufacturer's instructions. Notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of work. Do not start work until all negative conditions are corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer and manufacturer.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. GENERAL:** Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section. Install door units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or sash with manufacturer's prescribed tolerances. Provide support and anchor in place.
- B. DISSIMILAR MATERIALS:** Comply with AAMA 101, Appendix Dissimilar Materials by separating aluminum materials and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action contact points.
- C. WEATHER-TIGHT CONSTRUCTION:** Install header and framing members in a bed of sealant or with joint filler or gaskets. Coordinate installation with wall flashings and other components of construction.
- D. ELECTRICAL:** General or electrical contractor to install all wiring to operator on a separate circuit breaker routed into header. General or electrical contractor also to install all necessary power and low voltage wiring for proper operation of associated security systems.

3.03 CLEANING, ADJUSTMENT AND PROTECTION

- A. CLEANING:** After installation, installer to take following steps:
1. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
 2. Remove construction debris from construction site and legally dispose of debris.
 3. Repair or replace damaged installed products.
 4. Clean product surfaces and lubricate operating equipment for optimum condition and safety.
- B. ADJUSTMENT:** AAADM certified technician to inspect and adjust installation. Comply with ANSI A156.10.
- C. ADVISE CONTRACTOR:** Of precautions required through the remainder of the construction period, to ensure that doors will be without damage or deterioration (other than normal weathering) at the time of acceptance.

Note: Horton Automatics reserves the right to make product improvements and change specifications without notice.

END OF SECTION



© 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS

Profiler® Series 2000
Sliding Door System with Electric
Linear Drive Operator

A6.1

Page 1 of 6, Feb 15

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION 08 42 29.23 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

Specifier Note: Coordinate and edit articles and paragraphs below to suit project requirements. Add section numbers and titles per CSI "MasterFormat" and specifier's practice. Consult with manufacturer regarding performance requirements for units applicable to project, as well as, related equipment and accessories required.

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. WORK INCLUDED: Furnish complete automatic aluminum door system, as specified, that has been manufactured, fabricated and installed as per manufacturer's criteria without defects, damage or failure.
- B. RELATED WORK:
 - 1. Concrete: Division 03, applicable sections.
 - 2. Masonry: Division 04, applicable sections.
 - 3. Openings: Division 08, applicable sections.
 - 4. Electrical: Division 26, applicable sections.

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF AUTOMATIC DOOR MANUFACTURERS (AAADM).
- B. AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI):
 - 1. ANSI Z97.1: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Methods of Test.
 - 2. ANSI A156.10: For Power Operated Pedestrian Doors; Sliding Doors section.
 - 3. ANSI A156.5: Standard for Auxiliary Locks and Associated Products
- C. AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM) B221: Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes and Tubes.
- D. BUILDING OFFICIALS AND CODE ADMINISTRATORS INTERNATIONAL (BOCA)
- E. INTERNATIONAL CONFERENCE OF BUILDING OFFICIALS / UNIFORM BUILDING CODE (ICBO/UBC)
- F. INTERNATIONAL CODE COUNCIL / INTERNATIONAL BUILDING CODE (ICC/IBC)
- G. NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA) 101: Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings & Structures.
- H. THE ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA) Aluminum Finishes Manual.
- I. INTERTEK, WARNOCK HERSEY (ETL): Testing Laboratory and Certification Agency joined with ETL SEMKO
- J. UNDERWRITERS LABORATORY, INC. (USA & CANADA) UL 325: Electrical Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. SHOP DRAWINGS & PRODUCT DATA: Submit drawings and product data showing layout, profiles, product components including anchorage, accessories, finish and glazing details (where required).
- B. CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS: Submit the following:
 - 1. Owner's Manual & Warranty document as specified herein.
 - 2. AAADM inspection compliance form completed and signed by certified AAADM inspector prior to doors being placed in operation as proof of compliance with ANSI A156.10.



© 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS

Profiler® Series 2000
Sliding Door System with Electric
Linear Drive Operator

A6.2

Page 2 of 6, Feb 15

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. **INSTALLERS QUALIFICATIONS:** Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section.
- B. **MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS:** Manufacturer to have minimum (5) five years successful experience in the fabrication of automatic doors of the type required for this project. Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during installation, approving acceptable installer and approving application method.
- C. **CERTIFICATIONS:** Automatic sliding door systems and options shall be factory certified to meet performance design criteria in accordance with the following standards:
1. ANSI A156.10: For Power Operated Pedestrian Doors; Sliding Doors section.
 2. NFPA 101: Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings & Structures.
 3. ETL Listed: Tested to UL 325 Standard
 4. BOCA: Means of Egress, Power Operated Doors
 5. ICBO/UBC: Egress Through Lobbies
 6. ICC/IBC: Egress Section
- D. **OPERATING RANGE:** -30° F to 130° F (-34° C to 54° C)
- E. **OPENING FORCE REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY EGRESS:**
1. Slide-swing panels shall require no more than 50 lbf. (222 N) of force to swing open. Slide-swing panels shall be capable of swinging out 90° from any position of slide movement.
 2. Slide-swing panels and swing-out sidelites shall have torsion spring designed to re-close panel if pushed open in the direction of egress.
 3. If power fails, slide panels can be manually slid open with no more than 15 lbf (222 N) of force.
 4. Units are ETL listed as an exit way and are compliant with NFPA 101.
- F. **CLOSING FORCE REQUIREMENTS:** Maximum force required to prevent sliding panel from closing = 28 lbf. (124.5 N) Adjustable Reversing Circuit will reopen door unit if closing path is obstructed.
- G. **HEADER CAPACITY:** Header shall be capable of supporting:
1. Biparting: Up to 250 lbs. (113.4 kg) per slide panel over spans up to 16'-0" (4877mm) without intermediate supports.
 2. Single Slide: Up to 350 lbs. (158.7 kg) per slide panel over spans up to 9'-0" (2743mm) without intermediate supports

1.05 WARRANTIES

- A. **MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY:** Units to be warranted against defect in material and workmanship for a period of one year from the Date of Substantial Completion.
Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not limited to, other rights owner may have under Contract Documents.
- B. **DISTRIBUTOR'S WARRANTY:** 1 year warranty: Labor/ transportation charges for defective parts replacement.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

FIELD MEASUREMENTS: Verify actual dimensions/openings by field measurements before fabrication and record on shop drawings. Coordinate with fabrication and construction schedule to avoid construction delays.



© 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS

Profiler® Series 2000
Sliding Door System with Electric
Linear Drive Operator

A6.3

Page 3 of 6, Feb 15

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. ORDERING AND DELIVERY: Comply with factory's ordering instructions and lead time requirements. Delivery shall be in factory's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. STORAGE AND PROTECTION: Provide protection from exposure to harmful weather conditions and vandalism.

PART II – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

HORTON AUTOMATICS, a division of Overhead Door Corporation, shall manufacture automatic sliding door(s) of type(s) and size(s) specified on plans and door schedule.

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. MANUFACTURED DOOR UNITS: Shall include operator, header with roller track, carrier assemblies, framing, sliding door panel(s), sidelite(s), activation, safety devices and accessories required for complete installation.
1. Configuration: Single Slide or Biparting
 2. Mounting Type:
 - a. Perimeter mounted within rough opening with sliding panel(s) sliding along sidelite.
 - b. Surface mounted with sliding panel(s) sliding along wall eliminating need for sidelite.
 3. Door Type:
 - a. Type 010: Sliding panel(s) 'X' shall slide along interior side.
 - b. Type 110: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' shall slide along exterior side.
 - c. Type 310: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' shall slide along interior side. Unit has Swing-out sidelite 'SO'.
 - e. SpaceSaver™: Dual single slide units with common sidelite. Slide-swing panel 'SX' slides along exterior of middle sidelite 'O' from one direction. Sliding panel 'X' slides along interior side from opposite direction.
- B. OPERATOR: The Electric Operating Mechanism shall be Profiler® Series 2000 Linear Drive. The operator shall be mounted and concealed within the header.
1. Operation shall be accomplished through a 1/8 HP DC permanent magnet working with a threadless, induction hardened stainless steel 1/2" (13mm) diameter linear drive shaft. Maximum current draw shall not exceed 3.15 amps. A linear travel block describes a helical path along the rotating shaft utilizing six aircraft quality ball bearings acting as an integral clutch. Linear drive shaft shall be self lubricating by means of integral oiler located in the travel block.
 2. Master Control shall be 16 bit microprocessor controller with dual on-board seven-segment alphanumeric diagnostic display and position encoder. The encoder shall monitor revolutions of the operator shaft and send signals to microprocessor controller to define door position and speed. The control shall have minimum of 28 programmable parameters including the following functions as required by ANSI A156.10:
 - a. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.
 - b. Adjustable back-check and latching.
 - c. Adjustable braking.
 - d. Adjustable hold-open time between 1 to 30 seconds.
 - e. Adjustable Reversing Circuit will reopen door unit if closing path is obstructed.
 - f. Separate day and night modes of operation with security over-ride.
 3. Finger Safety: Strike rail of sliding panel will stop short of adjacent sidelite; resulting opening is net slide.
 4. On/Off Switch shall be supplied. When switched OFF, unit reverts to free manual operation (likewise during electrical power failure).



C. SECURITY AND SAFETY POWER FAIL OPTIONS:

1. Automatic lock: Automatically locks slide function of door when in closed position. Additional power supply for autolock not acceptable.
 - a. Autolock Fail Secure: If power fails the lock engages.
 - b. Autolock Fail Safe: If power fails the lock disengages.
2. Monitored Power Fail Options (battery back-up):
 - a. Software Selectable Power Fail Open: If power fails the door slides open.
 - b. Software Selectable Power Fail Close: If power fails the door slides closed.

D. PROFILER® HEADER: Shall be slim 4" (102mm) deep by 6" (152mm) high aluminum construction with extruded z-profile reinforcement for dead load and lateral strength. Header shall have removable face plate for service and adjustment of operator and controls. Header mounts flush to 4" framing jambs.

1. Type 410 units will require 6" x 6" header.
2. SpaceSaver™ headers shall be combined depth of 8" (203mm) with removable face plate for each.

E. CARRIER ASSEMBLIES AND HEADER ROLLER TRACK: Carrier assemblies shall support door panels with minimum four rollers per panel. Rollers will be steel, high quality ball bearing wheels 1-1/4" (32 mm) diameter. Anti-Derailing shall be accomplished by means of a continuous aluminum extrusion full length of slide panel travel. Overhead header roller track shall be continuous aluminum, nylon covered, and replaceable.

F. SLIDING PANEL(S) AND SIDELITE(S): Shall be aluminum, 1-3/4" (44 mm) deep with narrow stile rails. An intermediate, horizontal rail (muntin bar), 2 1/4" (57 mm) wide, shall be furnished for safety and division of glass (optional on 010 units). Standard bottom rail shall be 4" (102mm) tall. Sliding panels shall have concealed bottom guides to stabilize slide travel.

1. Weather-stripping: Along perimeter of sliding panel(s) and swing-out sidelite(s). Weatherstripping material captured in extruded aluminum door panel. Surface applied self-adhesive weatherstripping not acceptable. Adjustable spring-loaded double astragal weather-stripping at lead edge, double mohair at interlock rails
2. Standard glazing prep to be for 1/4" (6 mm) glass.
3. Sliding Panel and Sidelite Options shall be:
 - a. Medium stile construction: 3 3/4" (95mm) wide vertical rails with 6 1/2" (165mm) tall bottom rail. Note: Medium stile construction will reduce slide opening.
 - b. Wide stile construction: 5" (127mm) wide vertical rails with 6 1/2" (165mm) tall bottom rail. Note: Wide stile construction will reduce slide opening.
 - c. Surface applied push bar 1 1/2" (32mm) wide in lieu of standard muntin bar.
 - d. Custom horizontal muntins from 1/2" (13mm) to 10" (254mm) wide.
 - e. Custom bottom rails up to 10" (254mm) tall.
 - f. Additional and/or extra wide sidelites of size and type indicated.
 - g. Recessed sidelite and track and non-threshold application.
 - h. Prep for glazing 5/16" (16mm) to 1" (25mm).

G. BREAKOUT PANELS: Slide-swing panels can swing out min.90° from any position of slide movement and require no more than 50 lbf. (222 N) of force applied at the lock stile to open. Slide-swing panels and swing-out sidelites shall utilize spring loaded ball detent.

1. Slide-swing panels and swing-out sidelites shall have torsion spring designed to re-close panel if pushed open in the direction of egress.
2. Breakout mechanism shall provide support across full width of the door, in normal operating mode. In breakout mode, torsion assembly shall support weight of the door to minimize drop during emergency egress.
3. Slide-swing panels shall include intermediate horizontal rail.
4. Units with breakout feature are ETL listed as an exit away and are compliant with NFPA 101.



© 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS

Profiler® Series 2000
Sliding Door System with Electric
Linear Drive Operator

A6.5

Page 5 of 6, Feb 15

- H. JAMBS/FRAME: Shall be aluminum. Jamb dimensions to be:
1. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 4" (102mm) wide for Types 010, 110, & 310. Optional jambs include:
 - a. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 4 1/2" (114mm) wide.
 - b. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 - c. 2" (51mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 - d. 4" (102mm) square. Maximum height: 8'-8".
 2. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 6" (152mm) wide for Type 410.
 3. 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 8" (152mm) wide for SpaceSaver™.
 4. Frame Option: Transom of size and type indicated, mounted on header
- I. THRESHOLD: Shall be aluminum, 1/2" (25 mm) tall by 4" (102 mm) wide. Optional 7" (178 mm) wide.
- J. HARDWARE: ANSI A156.5, Grade 1, 2-Point Locking provided and installed in strike rail shall include:
1. Hookbolt Latch, 5/8" laminated stainless steel, latching into jamb or adjacent strike rail.
 2. 3/8" hex-bolt into breakout carrier frame.
 3. Keyed 1 5/32" (29 mm) Cylinder mounted on exterior side with 31/32" (25 mm) backset
 4. Thumbturn mounted on interior side.
 5. Hardware Options:
 - a. 3-Point locking for biparting doors
 - b. Flush Panic Exit Device recessed in 6 1/2" muntin bar for door types 110 and 310.
 - c. Surface mounted Panic Exit Device for door type 310.

2.03 RELATED EQUIPMENT

BASIC SENSOR SYSTEM: Shall be 24 VDC, class II circuit and shall be adjusted and installed in compliance with ANSI A156.10. System shall include the following:

- A. ACTIVATION SENSORS: Microwave or active infrared sensor shall be header-mounted each side of door unit for detection of traffic from each direction.
- B. THRESHOLD PRESENCE SENSORS:
1. Header mounted sensors shall provide active infrared presence detection on each side of the door unit and shall remain active throughout the entire door opening and closing cycle.
 2. Hold-open beams: Two pulsed infrared photoelectric beams to be mounted in vertical rails of sidelite or in jambs. Sender/receiver arrangement parallels door opening.

2.04 RELATED WORK REQUIREMENTS

- A. ELECTRICAL: 120 VAC, 50/60 cycle, single phase, dedicated 20 amp circuit per operator. Non-North American voltages can be 240 VAC 50/60 cycle (operator must have 240 volt power supply).
- B. GLASS AND GLAZING: Glass stops, glazing vinyl and setting blocks for field glazing as per Safety Glazing standard ANSI Z97.1.2. Contractor to coordinate acquisition of glass in thickness and type in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations for prescribed design.

2.05 MATERIALS, FINISHES AND FABRICATION

- A. EXTRUDED ALUMINUM: ASTM B221, 6063-T5 alloy and temper, anodized:
1. Structural Header Sections: Minimum 3/16" (5 mm) thickness.
 2. Structural Frame Sections: Minimum 1/8" (3 mm) thickness.
 3. Structural Panel Sections: Commercial grade.



© 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS

Profiler® Series 2000
Sliding Door System with Electric
Linear Drive Operator

A6.6

Page 6 of 6, Feb 15

B. FINISHES (for all exposed aluminum surfaces): Shall be one of the following:

1. 204-R1 Clear: Arch. Class 2 Clear Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A31.
2. 313-R1 Dark Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
3. 312-R1 Medium Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
4. 311-R1 Light Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
5. Champagne: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
6. Gold: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
7. Paint Coating:
 - a. Powder Coat: 100% V.O.C. free fluoropolymer resin-based. Standard and custom colors available including wood grain finish.
 - b. Wet Paint: Standard and custom colors available.
8. Clad with stainless steel or muntz metal (brass alloy): #7 mirror finish or #4 brushed finish.

C. PANEL CONSTRUCTION:

1. Corner block type with 3/16" steel backup plate construction, mechanically secured with minimum of four hardened steel screws. Sash consists of snap-in glass stops, snap-in glazing beads and vinyl gaskets.
2. Slide-swing doors to be supplied with adjustable glass setting block to allow for adjusting of door to meet site conditions eliminating the need for additional shims.

D. FRAME CONSTRUCTION: Butt joints, mechanically secured with screws and formed alum. corner brackets.

E. OPERATOR CONSTRUCTION: Electromechanical, modular type construction.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

SITE VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS: Installer must verify that base conditions are acceptable for product installation according to with manufacturer's instructions. Notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of work. Do not start work until all negative conditions are corrected.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. GENERAL: Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section. Install door units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or sash with manufacturer's prescribed tolerances. Provide support and anchor in place. Provide weather-tight construction.
- B. ELECTRICAL: General or electrical contractor to install all wiring to operator on a separate circuit breaker routed into header. General or electrical contractor also to install all necessary power and low voltage wiring for proper operation of associated security systems.

3.03 CLEANING, ADJUSTMENT AND PROTECTION

- A. CLEANING: After installation, installer will clean product surfaces and lubricate operating equipment for optimum condition and safety. Advise contractor of precautions required through the remainder of the construction period, to ensure that doors will be without damage or deterioration at the time of acceptance.
- B. ADJUSTMENT: AAADM certified technician to inspect and adjust installation. Comply with ANSI A156.10.

Note: Horton Automatics reserves the right to make product improvements and change specifications without notice.

END OF SECTION



4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System

AH5.0
Preliminary

DIVISION 08 - OPENINGS

SECTION 08 42 29.23 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

Specifier Note: Coordinate and edit articles and paragraphs below to suit project requirements. Add section numbers and titles per CSI "MasterFormat" and specifier's practice. Consult with manufacturer regarding performance requirements for units applicable to project, as well as, related equipment and accessories required.

PART I – GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

- A. WORK INCLUDED: Furnish complete automatic aluminum door system, as specified, that has been manufactured, fabricated and installed to maintain performance criteria stated by manufacturer without defects, damage or failure.
- B. RELATED WORK:
1. Concrete: Division 03, applicable sections.
 2. Masonry: Division 04, applicable sections.
 3. Thermal and Moisture Protection: Division 07, applicable sections.
 5. Openings: Division 08, applicable sections.
 6. Electrical: Division 26, applicable sections.

1.02 REFERENCES

- A. AMERICAN ARCHITECTURAL MANUFACTURERS ASSOCIATION (AAMA) 101: Appendix Dissimilar Materials.
- B. AMERICAN ASSOCIATION OF AUTOMATIC DOOR MANUFACTURERS (AAADM).
- C. AMERICAN NATIONAL STANDARDS INSTITUTE (ANSI):
1. ANSI Z97.1: Safety Glazing Materials Used in Buildings - Methods of Test.
 2. ANSI A156.10: For Power Operated Pedestrian Doors; Sliding Doors section.
- D. AMERICAN SOCIETY FOR TESTING AND MATERIALS (ASTM):
1. ASTM B221: Aluminum-Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Shapes and Tubes.
 2. ASTM E330-02: Static Load Test
 3. ASTM E283-04: Air Infiltration Test
- E. THE ALUMINUM ASSOCIATION (AA) Aluminum Finishes Manual.
- F. NATIONAL FIRE PROTECTION ASSOCIATION (NFPA) 101: Code for Safety to Life from Fire in Buildings & Structures.
- G. UNDERWRITERS LABORATORY, INC.(USA & CANADA) UL 325: Electrical Door, Drapery, Gate, Louver, and Window Operators and Systems.
- H. MIAMI-DADE COUNTY BUILDING CODE COMPLIANCE OFFICE (BCCO) NOTICE OF ACCEPTANCE (NOA)
1. No. **PENDING**: Impact - Large & Small Missile, Wind Load: +85/-85 PSF (Bi-Part Units)
 2. No. **PENDING**: Impact - Large & Small Missile, Wind Load: +70/-70 PSF (Single Slide Units)



® 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System

AH5.1
Preliminary

1.03 SUBMITTALS

- A. **PRODUCT DATA:** Submit manufacturer's complete product and installation data.
- B. **NOA LETTER AND DRAWINGS:** Submit Notice of Acceptance letter and drawings issued by BCCO showing layout, profiles, product components including anchorage, accessories and glazing details. Note: Any deviation from NOA letters and drawings voids compliance of Horton product with Miami-Dade County Building Code Compliance Office. Letters and drawings must be kept as complete set to meet compliance.
- C. **QUALITY ASSURANCE AND CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS:** Submit the following:
 - 1. Manufacturer's Operation and Maintenance Data.
 - 2. Warranty document as specified herein.
 - 3. AAADM inspection compliance form completed and signed by certified AAADM inspector prior to doors being placed in operation as proof of compliance with ANSI A156.10.

1.04 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. **INSTALLERS QUALIFICATIONS:** Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section.
- B. **MANUFACTURER'S QUALIFICATIONS:** Manufacturer to have minimum (5) five years successful experience in the fabrication of automatic doors of the type required for this project. Manufacturer capable of providing field service representation during installation, approving acceptable installer and approving application method.

1.05 WARRANTIES

- A. **MANUFACTURER'S WARRANTY:** Units to be warranted against defect in material and workmanship for a period of one year from the Date of Substantial Completion. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights owner may have under Contract Documents.
- B. **DISTRIBUTOR'S WARRANTY:** One year warranty: Labor & transportation charges for defective parts replacement.

1.06 PROJECT CONDITIONS

FIELD MEASUREMENTS: Verify actual dimensions/openings by field measurements before fabrication and record on shop drawings. Coordinate with fabrication and construction schedule to avoid construction delays.

1.07 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. **ORDERING AND DELIVERY:** Comply with factory's ordering instructions and lead time requirements. Delivery shall be in factory's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.
- B. **STORAGE AND PROTECTION:** Provide protection from exposure to harmful weather conditions and vandalism.

PART II – PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

HORTON AUTOMATICS, a division of Overhead Door Corporation, shall manufacture automatic sliding door(s) of type(s) and size(s) specified on plans and door schedule.



® 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System

AH5.2
Preliminary

2.02 EQUIPMENT

- A. **MANUFACTURED DOOR UNITS:** Shall include heavy duty operator, header and track, jambs, sliding door panel(s), and sidelite(s). Units shall be Type 310: Slide-swing panel(s) 'SX' slides along interior side of swing-out sidelite(s) 'SO'. Units will be either single-slide or bipart and will be perimeter mounted within rough opening. Door units will one of the following configurations:
1. Impact - Large & Small Missile, Wind Load: +85/-85 PSF (Bi-Part Units).
 - Maximum Size: 14' x 7'-8"
 2. Impact - Large & Small Missile, Wind Load: +70/-70 PSF (Single Slide Units).
 - Maximum Size: 9' x 7'-8"
- B. **OPERATOR:** The Electric Operating Mechanism shall be HD-Slide® Series 2001 Belt Drive. Maximum current draw shall not exceed 3.15 amps. The heavy duty operator shall be mounted and concealed within the header.
1. Operating force shall be accomplished through a 1/8 HP DC permanent magnet motor with heavy duty worm gear transmission and 1800 RPM working with reinforced drive belt, attached 1/4" thick steel door hangers, and idler pulley (1/4 HP motor required for door panels weighing 500 lbs). Drive belt to be steel reinforced nylon, 1" (25.4 mm) wide. Idler pulley to be reinforced, metallic material.
 2. Microprocessor Master Control shall have Version 10 software and have dual on-board seven-segment diagnostic display. The control shall have minimum of 28 programmable parameters including those functions required by ANSI A156.10. Control shall include separate day and night modes of operation with security over-ride. Adjustable Reversing Circuit will reopen door unit if closing path is obstructed. Maximum force required to prevent sliding panel from closing = 28 lbf.
 3. Finger Safety: When unit slides open, strike rail of sliding panel will stop short of adjacent sidelite; resulting opening is net slide.
 4. On/Off Switch shall be supplied. When switched OFF, unit reverts to free manual operation (likewise during electrical power failure).
- C. **SECURITY AND SAFETY POWER FAIL OPTIONS:**
1. Automatic lock: Automatically locks slide function of door when in closed position. Additional power supply for autolock not acceptable.
 - a. Autolock Fail Secure: If power fails the lock engages.
 - b. Autolock Fail Safe: If power fails the lock disengages.
 2. Monitored Power Fail Options (battery back-up):
 - a. Software Selectable Power Fail Open: If power fails the door slides open.
 - b. Software Selectable Power Fail Close: If power fails the door slides closed.
- D. **HD-SLIDE® HEADER:** Shall be 6" (152 mm) deep by 8" (203 mm) high, heavy duty aluminum construction with removable face plate and extruded support brackets for dead load and lateral strength.
- E. **HEADER TRACK:** Shall be aluminum and replaceable. Rollers will be non-metallic, high quality ball bearing wheels 2" (51 mm) diameter. Anti-Derailing shall be accomplished by means of a separate adjustable roller.
- F. **SLIDING PANEL(S) AND SIDELITE(S):** Shall be aluminum, 1-3/4" (44 mm) deep with medium stile rails. An intermediate, horizontal rail (muntin bar), 2 1/4" (57 mm) wide is optional. Standard bottom rail shall be 6.5" (165mm) tall. Weather-stripping to be along perimeter of sliding panel(s) and swing-out sidelite(s). Concealed guides to stabilize bottom of sliding panel.
1. Total weight limit per panel shall be:
 - a. Maximum excepted: 225 lbs (102 kg)
 - b. 156 lbs. (70.7 kg) for UL listed slide-swing panel
 2. Standard glazing prep as shown in approved NOA drawings shall be as follows:



® 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System

AH5.3
Preliminary

a. Impact units: to accommodate 9/16" glass.

G. EMERGENCY EGRESS: Slide and sidelite panels can swing out 90° from any position of slide movement and require no more than 50 lbf. (222 N) of force applied at the lock stile to open.

1. Slide-swing panels and swing-out sidelites shall have torsion spring designed to re-close panel if pushed open in the direction of egress.
2. Breakout mechanism shall provide support across full width of the door, in normal operating mode. In breakout mode, torsion assembly shall support weight of the door to minimize drop during emergency egress.
3. Units with emergency egress feature are UL listed as an exit way and are compliant with NFPA 101.

H. JAMBS/FRAME: Shall be aluminum. Jamb dimensions to be: 1 3/4" (44mm) deep by 4" (102mm) wide.

I. THRESHOLD: Shall be aluminum, 1/2" (25 mm) tall by 7" (178 mm) wide.

J. HARDWARE: Provided and installed in strike rail shall be:

1. 5/8" Hookbolt Lock latching into jamb or adjacent strike rail.
2. Maximum Security Lock with 31/32" (25 mm) backset.
3. Keyed Cylinder mounted on exterior side with 1 5/32" (29 mm) standard size cylinder.
4. Thumbturn mounted on interior side.
5. 3/8" Lockbolt into breakout carrier frame and threshold.
6. Hardware Options:
 - a. Lock Indicator.
 - b. Cylinder Guard.
 - c. Cylinder Escutcheon.
7. Adams Rite 8600 concealed vertical rod panic hardware (optional)

2.03 RELATED EQUIPMENT

BASIC SENSOR SYSTEM: Shall be 24 VDC, class II circuit and shall be adjusted and installed in compliance with ANSI A156.10. System shall include the following:

A. ACTIVATION SENSORS: Microwave or active infrared sensor shall be header-mounted each side of door unit for detection of traffic from each direction.

B. THRESHOLD PRESENCE SENSORS:

1. Header mounted sensors shall provide active infrared presence detection on each side of the door unit and shall remain active throughout the entire door opening and closing cycle.
2. Hold-open beams: Two pulsed infrared photoelectric beams to be mounted in vertical rails of sidelite or in jambs. Sender/receiver arrangement parallels door opening.

2.04 RELATED WORK REQUIREMENTS

A. ELECTRICAL: 120 VAC, 50/60 cycle, single phase, dedicated 20 amp circuit per operator. Non-North American voltages can be 240 VAC 50/60 cycle (operator must have 240 volt power supply).

B. GLASS AND GLAZING: Glass stops, glazing vinyl and setting blocks for field glazing as per Safety Glazing standard ANSI Z97.1.2. Contractor to coordinate acquisition of glass in thickness and type in accordance with approved NOA drawings:

1. 9/16" thick laminated glass consisting of:
 - a. 1/4" heat strengthened\0.090 Dupont SentyGlas\1/4" heat strengthened (or)
 - b. 1/4" heat strengthened\0.075 Vanceva Solutia VS02\1/4" heat strengthened



® 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System

AH5.4
Preliminary

2.05 MATERIALS, FINISHES AND FABRICATION

- A. **EXTRUDED ALUMINUM:** ASTM B221, 6063-T5 alloy and temper, anodized:
1. Structural Header Sections: Minimum 3/16" (5 mm) thickness.
 2. Structural Frame Sections: Minimum 1/8" (3 mm) thickness.
 3. Structural Panel Sections: Minimum 1/8" (3 mm) thickness.
- B. **FINISHES** (for all exposed aluminum surfaces): Shall be one of the following:
1. 204-R1 Clear: Arch. Class 2 Clear Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A31.
 2. 313-R1 Dark Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
 3. 312-R1 Light Bronze: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
 4. 315-R1 Black: Arch. Class 1 Anodized Coating, AA-MI2C22A44.
 5. Special Paint Coating: Color as selected.
 6. Clad with stainless steel or muntz metal (brass alloy): #7 mirror finish or #4 brushed finish.
- C. **PANEL CONSTRUCTION:**
1. Corner block type with 3/16" steel backup plate construction, mechanically secured with minimum of four hardened steel screws. Strike rail to have reinforcing A36 steel backup tube: 1 1/4" square x 1/8", full length of vertical rail. Sash consists of snap-in glass stops, snap-in glazing beads and vinyl gaskets.
 2. Weatherstripping material captured in extruded aluminum door panel. Door nosing weatherstrip to be spring-loaded adjustable astragal type. Surface applied self-adhesive weatherstripping not acceptable.
 3. Slide-swing doors to be supplied with adjustable glass setting block to allow for adjusting of door to meet site conditions eliminating the need for additional shims.
- D. **FRAME CONSTRUCTION:** Butt joints, mechanically secured by means of screws and formed aluminum corner brackets.
- E. **OPERATOR CONSTRUCTION:** Electromechanical, modular type construction.

PART III - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

SITE VERIFICATION OF CONDITIONS: Installer must verify that base conditions previously installed under other sections are acceptable for product installation according to with manufacturer's instructions. Notify the Contractor in writing of conditions detrimental to the proper and timely completion of work. Do not start work until all negative conditions are corrected in a manner acceptable to the installer and manufacturer.

3.02 INSTALLATION

- A. **GENERAL:** Installer shall be factory trained, certified by AAADM, and experienced to perform work of this section. Install door units plumb, level and true to line, without warp or rack of frames or sash with manufacturer's prescribed tolerances. Shims to comply with Florida Building Code and resist rotation of frame. Provide support and anchor in place as indicated on approved NOA drawings.
- B. **DISSIMILAR MATERIALS:** Comply with AAMA 101, Appendix Dissimilar Materials by separating aluminum materials and other corrodible surfaces from sources of corrosion or electrolytic action contact points.
- C. **WEATHER-TIGHT CONSTRUCTION:** Install header and framing members in a bed of sealant or with joint filler or gaskets. Coordinate installation with wall flashings and other components of construction.



® 4242 Baldwin Boulevard
Corpus Christi, Texas
USA 78405-3399
Tel: 800-531-3111, 361-888-5591
Fax: 800-531-3108, 361-888-6510
www.hortondoors.com
The Automatic Choice

ARCHITECTURAL SPECS

AUTOMATIC SLIDING DOORS – HURRICANE RATED

HD-Storm™ Hurricane Rated Series	AH5.5
85 PSF Aluminum Bi-Part Sliding Door System	Preliminary
70 PSF Aluminum Single Slide Door System	

D. ELECTRICAL: General or electrical contractor to install all wiring to operator on a separate circuit breaker routed into header. General or electrical contractor also to install all necessary power and low voltage wiring for proper operation of associated security systems.

3.03 CLEANING, ADJUSTMENT AND PROTECTION

A. CLEANING: After installation, installer to take following steps:

1. Remove temporary coverings and protection of adjacent work areas.
2. Remove construction debris from construction site and legally dispose of debris.
3. Repair or replace damaged installed products.
4. Clean product surfaces and lubricate operating equipment for optimum condition and safety.

B. ADJUSTMENT: AAADM certified technician shall inspect and adjust installation to assure compliance with ANSI A156.10.

C. ADVISE CONTRACTOR: Of precautions required through the remainder of the construction period, to ensure that doors will be without damage or deterioration (other than normal weathering) at the time of acceptance.

Note: Horton Automatics reserves the right to make product improvements and change specifications without notice.

END OF SECTION

DIVISION **9**

FINISHES

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 09220

PORTLAND CEMENT PLASTER

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Nonstructural steel framing and furring.
 - 2. Exterior portland cement plasterwork (stucco) on metal lath plaster bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for structural, load-bearing (transverse and axial) steel studs and joists that support lath and portland cement plaster.
 - 2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood framing and furring, sheathing, and water-resistant barriers included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
 - 3. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for thermal insulations and vapor retarders included in portland cement plaster assemblies.
 - 4. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealants installed with exterior portland cement plaster (stucco).

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and installation of control and expansion joints including plans, elevations, sections, details of components, and attachments to other work.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of factory-prepared finish coat indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each type of colored and textured finish coat indicated; **12 by 12 inches** , and prepared on rigid backing.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For portland cement plaster assemblies with fire-resistance ratings, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Mockups: Before plastering, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Install mockups for each type of finish indicated.
 - 2. For interior plasterwork, simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 - 3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- C. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, direct sunlight, surface contamination, corrosion, construction traffic, and other causes.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Comply with ASTM C 926 requirements.
- B. Exterior Plasterwork:
 - 1. Apply and cure plaster to prevent plaster drying out during curing period. Use procedures required by climatic conditions, including moist curing, providing coverings, and providing barriers to deflect sunlight and wind.
 - 2. Apply plaster when ambient temperature is greater than 40 deg F.
 - 3. Protect plaster coats from freezing for not less than 48 hours after set of plaster coat has occurred.
- C. Factory-Prepared Finishes: Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for environmental conditions for applying finishes.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, products specified.
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the products specified.
3. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
4. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.

2.2 NONSTRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING MEMBERS, GENERAL

A. Available Manufacturers:

1. California Expanded Metal Products Company (CEMCO).
2. Clark Steel Framing Systems.
3. Consolidated Systems, Inc.
4. Dale/Incor.
5. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
6. Marino/Ware; Division of Ware Industries, Inc.
7. Phillips Manufacturing Co.
8. SCAFCO Corporation.
9. Unimast, Inc.
10. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.
11. Amico Corp.

B. Components, General: Comply with ASTM C 1063. For steel sheet components not included in ASTM C 1063, comply with ASTM C 645 requirements for metal, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Cold-Rolled Channels: Base metal thickness of 0.0538 inch with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.

2.3 STEEL FRAMING FOR PARTITIONS

A. Steel Studs and Runners: ASTM C 645.

1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
2. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: As indicated.
3. Depth: As indicated.

B. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
2. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: As indicated.

C. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled channels in depth indicated.

1. Clip Angle: As shown on plans.

D. Vertical Furring:

1. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C 645.
 - a. Protective Coating: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60, hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
 - b. Minimum Base Metal Thickness: As indicated.
 - c. Depth: As indicated.
2. Furring Channels: Cold-rolled channels, in depth indicated.
 - a. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge type fabricated from steel sheet with minimum bare steel thickness of 0.0312 inch.

2.4 METAL LATH

- A. Expanded-Metal Lath: ASTM C 847 with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 (Z180), hot-dip galvanized zinc coating.
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Alabama Metal Industries Corporation (AMICO).
 - b. California Expanded Metal Products Company (CEMCO).
 - c. Dale/Incor.
 - d. Marino/Ware; Division of Ware Industries, Inc.
 - e. Phillips Manufacturing Co.
 - f. Unimast, Inc.
 - g. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.
 2. Diamond-Mesh Lath: Self-furring.
 - a. Weight: 3.4 lb/sq. yd.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 1063 and coordinate depth of trim and accessories with thicknesses and number of plaster coats required. See notes on plans.
- B. Zinc Accessories:
 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Alabama Metal Industries Corporation (AMICO).
 - b. California Expanded Metal Products Company (CEMCO).
 - c. Dale/Incor.
 - d. Dietrich Industries, Inc.
 - e. Phillips Manufacturing Co.

- f. Unimast, Inc.
 - g. Western Metal Lath & Steel Framing Systems.
-
- 2. Foundation Weep Screed: Fabricated from zinc.
 - 3. Cornerite: Fabricated from zinc.
 - 4. External-Corner Reinforcement: Fabricated from zinc.
 - 5. Cornerbeads: Fabricated from zinc.
 - 6. Casing Beads: Fabricated from zinc; square-edged style; with expanded flanges.
 - 7. Control Joints: Fabricated from zinc; one-piece-type, folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with perforated flanges and removable protective tape on plaster face of control joint.
 - 8. Expansion Joints: Fabricated from zinc; folded pair of unperforated screeds in M-shaped configuration; with expanded flanges.
 - 9. Two-Piece Expansion Joints: Fabricated from zinc; formed to produce slip-joint and square-edged reveal that is adjustable from **1/4-to-5/8-inch** wide; with perforated flanges.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Water for Mixing: Potable and free of substances capable of affecting plaster set or of damaging plaster, lath, or accessories.
- B. Fiber for Base Coat: Alkaline-resistant glass or polypropylene fibers, **1/2 inch** long, free of contaminants, manufactured for use in portland cement plaster.
- C. Bonding Compound: ASTM C 932.
- D. Steel Drill Screws: For metal-to-metal fastening, ASTM C 1002 or ASTM C 954, as required by thickness of metal being fastened; with pan head that is suitable for application; in lengths required to achieve penetration through joined materials of not fewer than three exposed threads.
- E. Fasteners for Attaching Metal Lath to Substrates: Complying with ASTM C 1063.
- F. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing), produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- G. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls:
 - 1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D 226, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), unperforated.
 - 2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, **1/8 inch** thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

H. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints: Nonsag, paintable, nonstaining, latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834 that effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

1. Available Products:

- a. OSI Sealants, Inc.; Pro-Series, SC 175 Acoustical Sound Sealant Non-Flammable - Latex.
- b. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 + Silicone.
- c. Tremco Incorporated; Tremflex 834.
- d. United States Gypsum Co.; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.

I. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints: Nondrying, nonhardening, nonskinning, nonstaining, gunnable, synthetic-rubber sealant recommended for sealing interior concealed joints to reduce airborne sound transmission.

1. Available Products:

- a. OSI Sealants, Inc.; Pro-Series SC 170 Acoustical Sound Sealant - Solvent.
- b. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
- c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.

2.7 PLASTER MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I or II.

B. Masonry Cement: ASTM C 91, Type N.

C. Plastic Cement: ASTM C 1328.

D. Colorants for Job-Mixed Finish-Coats: Colorfast mineral pigments that produce finish plaster color to match existing building.

E. Lime: ASTM C 206, Type S; or ASTM C 207, Type S.

F. Sand Aggregate: ASTM C 897.

1. Color for Job-Mixed Finish Coats: In color matching existing building.

G. Ready-Mixed Finish-Coat Plaster: Mill-mixed portland cement, aggregates, coloring agents, and proprietary ingredients.

1. Available Products:

- a. California Stucco Products Corp.; Conventional Portland Cement Stucco.
- b. ChemRex; Thoro Stucco.
- c. Florida Stucco Corp.
- d. Highland Stucco & Lime Products, Inc.
- e. United States Gypsum Co.; Oriental Exterior Finish Stucco.

2. Color: In color matching existing building.

2.8 PLASTER MIXES

- A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926 for applications indicated.
 1. Fiber Content: Add fiber to base-coat mixes after ingredients have mixed at least two minutes. Comply with fiber manufacturer's written instructions for fiber quantities in mixes, but do not exceed 1 lb of fiber/cu. yd. of cementitious materials. Reduce aggregate quantities accordingly to maintain workability.
- B. Base-Coat Mixes for Use over Metal Lath: Scratch and brown coats for three-coat plasterwork as follows:
 1. Portland Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 0 to $\frac{3}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 0 to $\frac{3}{4}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ to 1-1/2 parts lime. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 2. Masonry Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: 1 part masonry cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
 - b. Brown Coat: 1 part masonry cement and 3 to 5 parts aggregate.
 3. Portland and Masonry Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 - b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 4. Plastic Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: 1 part plastic cement and 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate.
 - b. Brown Coat: 1 part plastic cement and 3 to 5 parts aggregate.
 5. Portland and Plastic Cement Mixes:
 - a. Scratch Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part plastic cement and 1 part portland cement. Use 2-1/2 to 4 parts aggregate per part of

- cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
- b. Brown Coat: For cementitious material, mix 1 part plastic cement and 1 part portland cement. Use 3 to 5 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
- C. Job-Mixed Finish-Coat Mixes:
1. Portland Cement Mix: For cementitious materials, mix 1 part portland cement and 3/4 to 1-1/2 or 1-1/2 to 2 parts lime. Use 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 2. Masonry Cement Mix: 1 part masonry cement and 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate.
 3. Portland and Masonry Cement Mix: For cementitious materials, mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part masonry cement. Use 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate per part of cementitious material (sum of separate volumes of each component material).
 4. Plastic Cement Mix: 1 part plastic cement and 1-1/2 to 3 parts aggregate.
- D. Factory-Prepared Finish-Coat Mixes: For ready-mixed finish-coat plasters, comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
 1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Protect adjacent work from soiling, spattering, moisture deterioration, and other harmful effects caused by plastering.
- B. Prepare solid-plaster bases that are smooth or that do not have the suction capability required to bond with plaster according to ASTM C 926.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Install components according to requirements for design designations from listing organization and publication indicated on Drawings.
- B. Acoustical Sealant: Where required, seal joints between edges of plasterwork and abutting construction with acoustical sealant.

3.4 INSTALLING NONSTRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING, GENERAL

- A. General: Comply with requirements in ASTM C 1063 for applications indicated.
 - 1. Comply with ASTM C 754 for installation of items not addressed in ASTM C 1063.
- B. Install supplementary framing, blocking, and bracing at terminations in plaster assemblies to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.
- C. Isolate steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.
 - 1. Isolate ceiling assemblies where they abut or are penetrated by building structure.
 - 2. Isolate partition framing and wall furring where it abuts structure, except at floor. At head of assemblies, install slip-type joints that avoid axial loading and that support assembly laterally.
- D. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with steel framing or furring members. Frame both sides of joints independently.
- E. Soffits: Unless otherwise detailed on Drawings, install furred or suspended soffits to comply with requirements for ceiling installation; install framed soffits to comply with requirements for partition installation.

3.5 INSTALLING ACCESSORIES

- A. Install according to ASTM C 1063 and at locations indicated on Drawings.
- B. Reinforcement for External Corners:
 - 1. Install lath-type external-corner reinforcement at exterior locations.
 - 2. Install cornerbead at interior and exterior locations.
- C. Control Joints: Install control joints at locations indicated on Drawings.
 - 1. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) of the following maximum sizes:
 - a. Vertical Surfaces: 144 sq. ft.
 - b. Horizontal and other Nonvertical Surfaces: 100 sq. ft.
 - 2. At distances between control joints of not greater than 18 feet o.c.
 - 3. As required to delineate plasterwork into areas (panels) with length-to-width ratios of not greater than 2-1/2:1.
 - 4. Where control joints occur in surface of construction directly behind plaster.

5. Where plasterwork areas change dimensions, to delineate rectangular-shaped areas (panels) and to relieve the stress that occurs at the corner formed by the dimension change.

3.6 PLASTER APPLICATION

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 926.

1. Do not deviate more than plus or minus **1/4 inch in 10 feet** from a true plane in finished plaster surfaces, as measured by a **10-foot** straightedge placed on surface.
2. Grout hollow-metal frames, bases, and similar work occurring in plastered areas, with base-coat plaster material, before lathing where necessary. Except where full grouting is indicated or required for fire-resistance rating, grout at least **6 inches** at each jamb anchor.
3. Finish plaster flush with metal frames and other built-in metal items or accessories that act as a plaster ground, unless otherwise indicated. Where casing bead does not terminate plaster at metal frame, cut base coat free from metal frame before plaster sets and groove finish coat at junctures with metal.
4. Provide plaster surfaces that are ready to receive field-applied finishes indicated.

B. Plaster Finish Coats: Apply to provide float finish to match existing building.

3.7 CUTTING AND PATCHING

- #### A.
- Cut, patch, replace, and repair plaster as necessary to accommodate other work and to restore cracks, dents, and imperfections. Repair or replace work to eliminate blisters, buckles, crazing and check cracking, dry outs, efflorescence, sweat outs, and similar defects and where bond to substrate has failed.

3.8 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- #### A.
- Remove temporary protection and enclosure of other work. Promptly remove plaster from doorframes, windows, and other surfaces not indicated to be plastered. Repair floors, walls, and other surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during plastering.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 09250

GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

- 1. Interior gypsum board.
- 2. Tile backing panels.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 5 Section "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for load-bearing steel framing that supports gypsum board.
- 2. Division 6 Section "Rough Carpentry" for wood framing and furring that supports gypsum board.
- 3. Division 7 Section "Building Insulation" for insulation and vapor retarders installed in assemblies that incorporate gypsum board.
- 4. Division 9 Section "Resilient Floor Tile" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.
- 5. Division 9 painting Sections for primers applied to gypsum board surfaces.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

- B. Samples: For the following products:

- 1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch long length for each trim accessory indicated.
- 2. Textured Finishes: Manufacturer's standard size for each textured finish indicated and on same backing indicated for Work.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

- B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 90 and classified according to ASTM E 413 by an independent testing agency.
- C. Mockups: Before beginning gypsum board installation, install mockups of at least 100 sq. ft. in surface area to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Install mockups for the following:
 - a. Each level of gypsum board finish indicated for use in exposed locations.
 - b. Each texture finish indicated.
 - 2. Apply or install final decoration indicated, including painting and wallcoverings, on exposed surfaces for review of mockups.
 - 3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for review of mockups.
 - 4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 STORAGE AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other causes. Stack panels flat to prevent sagging.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations, whichever are more stringent.
- B. Do not install interior products until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.
- C. Do not install panels that are wet, those that are moisture damaged, and those that are mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Size: Provide in maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.2 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Complying with ASTM C 36/C 36M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, as applicable to type of gypsum board indicated and whichever is more stringent.
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum Co.
 - b. BPB America Inc.
 - c. G-P Gypsum.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - e. National Gypsum Company.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum.
 - g. Temple.
 - h. USG Corporation.
- B. Type X:
1. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- C. Flexible Type: Manufactured to bend to fit radii and to be more flexible than standard regular-type gypsum board of same thickness.
1. Thickness: **1/4 inch**.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.
- D. Moisture- and Mold-Resistant Type: With moisture- and mold-resistant core and surfaces.
1. Core: **5/8 inch**, Type X.
 2. Long Edges: Tapered.

2.3 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR WALLS, CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

- A. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C 1177/C 1177M.
1. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "Dens-Glass Gold" by G-P Gypsum.
 2. Core: **1/2 inch**, regular type.

2.4 TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: ASTM C 630/C 630M or ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. American Gypsum Co.
 - b. BPB America Inc.
 - c. G-P Gypsum.
 - d. Lafarge North America Inc.
 - e. National Gypsum Company.
 - f. PABCO Gypsum.
 - g. Temple.
 - h. USG Corporation.
 3. Core: **5/8 inch**, Type X.
- B. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Board:
1. Complying with ASTM C 1178/C 1178M.
 - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "DensShield Tile Guard" by G-P Gypsum.
 2. Complying with ASTM C1177/C 1177M.
 - a. Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide "DensArmor Plus Interior Guard" by G-P Gypsum.
 3. Core: **1/2 inch**, regular type or **5/8 inch**, Type X.
- C. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A118.9.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Custom Building Products; Wonderboard.
 - b. FinPan, Inc.; Util-A-Crete Concrete Backer Board.
 - c. USG Corporation; DUROCK Cement Board.
 3. Thickness: **1/2 inch**.
- 2.5 TRIM ACCESSORIES
- A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.
1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet, rolled zinc, plastic, or paper-faced galvanized steel sheet.
 2. Shapes:

- a. Cornerbead.
- b. Bullnose bead.
- c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
- d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
- e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.
- f. Expansion (control) joint.
- g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc.
2. Shapes:
 - a. Cornerbead.
 - b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
 - c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

C. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.

1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Fry Reglet Corp.
 - b. Gordon, Inc.
 - c. Pittcon Industries.
3. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of **ASTM B 221**, Alloy 6063-T5.
4. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.6 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Wallboard: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Wallboard: For each coat use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use setting-type taping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
 - a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.
3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping or drying-type, all-purpose compound.
5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use setting-type, sandable topping compound or drying-type, all-purpose compound.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.
2. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
3. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.

2.7 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

- A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written recommendations.
- B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.
 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick.
 2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

- D. Sound Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.
 - 1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.
- E. Acoustical Sealant: As specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
 - 1. Provide sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."
- G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Division 7 Section "Building Insulation."

2.8 TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Primer: As recommended by textured finish manufacturer.
- B. Aggregate or Unaggregated Finish: Water-based, job-mixed, drying-type texture finish for spray application.
 - 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. G-P Gypsum; Georgia-Pacific Ceiling Textures/Vermiculite.
 - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Wall and Ceiling Spray Texture.
 - 3. Texture: Light orange peel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames and framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance.
- B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLYING AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

- A. Comply with ASTM C 840.
- B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.
- C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than **1/16 inch** of open space between panels. Do not force into place.
- D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.
- E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.
- F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.
 - 1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than **8 sq. ft.** in area.
 - 2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
 - 3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow **1/4- to 3/8-inch** wide joints to install sealant.
- G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments, except floors. Provide **1/4- to 1/2-inch** wide spaces at these locations, and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.
- H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.
- I. Wood Framing: Install gypsum panels over wood framing, with floating internal corner construction. Do not attach gypsum panels across the flat grain of wide-dimension lumber, including floor joists and headers. Float gypsum panels over these members, or provide control joints to counteract wood shrinkage.
- J. STC-Rated Assemblies: Seal construction at perimeters, behind control joints, and at openings and penetrations with a continuous bead of acoustical sealant. Install acoustical sealant at both faces of partitions at perimeters and through penetrations. Comply with ASTM C 919 and with manufacturer's written recommendations for

locating edge trim and closing off sound-flanking paths around or through assemblies, including sealing partitions above acoustical ceilings.

3.3 APPLYING INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing, unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing), unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.
 - a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
 - b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
3. On Z-furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

B. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying face layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints 1 framing member, 16 inches minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers and face layers separately to supports with screws.

C. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written recommendations and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

D. Curved Surfaces:

1. Install panels horizontally (perpendicular to supports) and unbroken, to extent possible, across curved surface plus 12-inch long straight sections at ends of curves and tangent to them.
2. For double-layer construction, fasten base layer to studs with screws 16 inches o.c. Center gypsum board face layer over joints in base layer, and fasten to studs with screws spaced 12 inches o.c.

3.4 APPLYING TILE BACKING PANELS

- A. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Install at showers, tubs, and where indicated. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- B. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and install at locations indicated to receive tile. Install with 1/4-inch gap where panels abut other construction or penetrations.
- C. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at where indicated or locations indicated to receive tile.
- D. Areas Not Subject to Wetting: Install regular-type gypsum wallboard panels to produce a flat surface except at showers, tubs, and other locations indicated to receive water-resistant panels.
- E. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.5 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

- A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.
- C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 2. Bullnose Bead: Use at outside corners.
 3. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 4. L-Bead: Use where indicated.
 5. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.
 6. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.
- D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:
 1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
 2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges.

- E. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.6 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

- A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.
- B. Prefill open joints, rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.
- C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except those with trim having flanges not intended for tape.
- D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:
 - 1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
 - 2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile.
 - 3. Level 3: Where indicated on Drawings.
 - 4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view, unless otherwise indicated.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 9 Sections.
 - 5. Level 5: Where indicated on Drawings.
 - a. Primer and its application to surfaces are specified in other Division 9 Sections.
- E. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for use as exposed soffit board.
- F. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panels: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.7 APPLYING TEXTURE FINISHES

- A. Surface Preparation and Primer: Prepare and apply primer to gypsum panels and other surfaces receiving texture finishes. Apply primer to surfaces that are clean, dry, and smooth.
- B. Texture Finish Application: Mix and apply finish using powered spray equipment, to produce a uniform texture matching approved mockup and free of starved spots or other evidence of thin application or of application patterns.

- C. Prevent texture finishes from coming into contact with surfaces not indicated to receive texture finish by covering them with masking agents, polyethylene film, or other means. If, despite these precautions, texture finishes contact these surfaces, immediately remove droppings and overspray to prevent damage according to texture-finish manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.8 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.
- B. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.
 - 1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
 - 2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09512

ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes acoustical tiles for ceilings and the following:
 - 1. Concealed suspension systems.
- B. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete at ceilings.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. AC: Articulation Class.
- B. CAC: Ceiling Attenuation Class.
- C. LR: Light-Reflectance coefficient.
- D. NRC: Noise Reduction Coefficient.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
 - 1. Ceiling suspension system members.
 - 2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.
 - a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.
 - 3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.

4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
 5. Minimum Drawing Scale: $1/4$ inch = 1 foot or $1/8$ inch = 1 foot.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.
- D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.
1. Acoustical Tile: Set of full-size Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
 2. Concealed Suspension System Members: 12-inch long Sample of each type.
 3. Exposed Moldings and Trim: Set of 12-inch long Samples of each type and color.
- E. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for each acoustical tile ceiling.
- H. Research/Evaluation Reports: For acoustical tile ceiling and components and anchor and fastener type.
- I. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Acoustical Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing laboratory, or an NVLAP-accredited laboratory, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated. NVLAP-accredited laboratories must document accreditation, based on a "Certificate of Accreditation" and a "Scope of Accreditation" listing the test methods specified.
- B. Source Limitations:
1. Acoustical Ceiling Tile: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
 2. Suspension System: Obtain each type through one source from a single manufacturer.
- C. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of acoustical ceiling tile and supporting suspension system through one source from a single manufacturer.
- D. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide acoustical tile ceilings that comply with the following requirements:
1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Where indicated, provide acoustical tile ceilings identical to those of assemblies tested for fire resistance per ASTM E 119 by UL

or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

- a. Identify materials with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
2. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide acoustical tiles with the following surface-burning characteristics complying with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84:
 - a. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.
- E. Seismic Standard: Provide acoustical tile ceilings designed and installed to withstand the effects of earthquake motions according to the following:
 1. Standard for Ceiling Suspension Systems Requiring Seismic Restraint: Comply with ASTM E 580.
 2. ASCE 7, "Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures": Section 9, "Earthquake Loads."
- F. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 1. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
- G. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 1 Section "Project Management and Coordination."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.
- B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.
- C. Handle acoustical tiles carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of acoustical tiles and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size tiles equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.
 2. Suspension System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed component equal to 2.0 percent of quantity installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ACOUSTICAL TILES, GENERAL

- A. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances, unless otherwise indicated.
 1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface per ASTM E 795.
- B. Acoustical Tile Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.
 1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical tiles are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.
- C. Broad Spectrum Antimicrobial Fungicide and Bactericide Treatment: Provide acoustical tiles treated with manufacturer's standard antimicrobial formulation that inhibits fungus, mold, mildew, and gram-positive and gram-negative bacteria and showing no mold, mildew, or bacterial growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.
- D. Antimicrobial Fungicide Treatment: Provide acoustical tiles with face and back surfaces coated with antimicrobial treatment consisting of manufacturer's standard

formulation with fungicide added to inhibit growth of mold and mildew and showing no mold or mildew growth when tested according to ASTM D 3273 and evaluated according to ASTM D 3274 or ASTM G 21.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL TILES FOR ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILING

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc..
 - 2. BPB USA.
 - 3. USG Interiors, Inc.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product.
- D. Color: As selected from manufacturer's full range.
- E. Edge/Joint Detail: Tegular.
- F. Thickness: **5/8 inch**.
- G. Modular Size: As indicated on Drawings.
- H. Antimicrobial Treatment: Broad spectrum fungicide and bactericide based.

2.3 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

- A. Metal Suspension System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635.
- B. Finishes and Colors, General: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes. Provide manufacturer's standard factory-applied finish for type of system indicated.
- C. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.
- D. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:
 - 1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.

2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at 3 times hanger design load (ASTM C 635, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.106-inch diameter wire.

- E. Hanger Rods or Flat Hangers: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.
- F. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch thick, galvanized steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch diameter bolts.
- G. Seismic Struts: Manufacturer's standard compression struts designed to accommodate lateral forces.
- H. Seismic Clips: Manufacturer's standard seismic clips designed and spaced to secure acoustical tiles in-place.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM FOR ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILING

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 2. USG Interiors, Inc.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product.
- D. Direct-Hung, Double-Web Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G30 coating designation.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate duty system.
 - 2. Access: Upward with initial access openings of size indicated below and located throughout ceiling within each module formed by main and cross runners, with additional access available by progressively removing remaining acoustical tiles.
 - a. Initial Access Opening: In each module.
- E. Indirect-Hung Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G30 coating designation.
 - 1. Structural Classification: Intermediate duty system.
 - 2. Carrying Channels: Cold-rolled steel, 0.059850-inch minimum base (uncoated) metal thickness, not less than 3/16-inch wide flanges by 1-1/2-inch deep steel channels, 475 lb/1000 feet, with rust-inhibitive paint finish or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G60 coating designation.

3. Access: Where access is indicated, provide special cross runners or split splines to allow for removal of acoustical units in indicated access areas. Identify access tile with manufacturer's standard unobtrusive markers for each access unit.

2.5 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 2. BPB USA.
 3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
 4. Fry Reglet Corporation.
 5. Gordon, Inc.
 6. USG Interiors, Inc.
- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide the product indicated on Drawings or a comparable product.
- D. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations that comply with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension system runners.
 1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical tile edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners, unless otherwise indicated.
 2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.
- E. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips, complying with seismic design requirements and the following:
 1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated, and with not less than the strength and durability properties of aluminum extrusions complying with **ASTM B 221** for Alloy and Temper 6063-T5.
 2. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
 3. Conversion-Coated Finish: AA-M12C42 (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating).
 4. Conversion-Coated and Factory-Primed Finish: AA-M12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; organic coating as follows):

- a. Manufacturer's standard factory-applied prime-coat finish ready for field painting.
5. Class II, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A31 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class II, clear coating 0.010 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
6. Baked-Enamel Finish: AA-C12C42R1x (Chemical Finish: cleaned with inhibited chemicals; Chemical Finish: acid-chromate-fluoride-phosphate conversion coating; organic coating: as specified below). Apply baked enamel complying with paint manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and painting.

2.6 ACOUSTICAL SEALANT

- A. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 1. Acoustical Sealant for Exposed and Concealed Joints:
 - a. Pecora Corporation; AC-20 FTR Acoustical and Insulation Sealant.
 - b. USG Corporation; SHEETROCK Acoustical Sealant.
 2. Acoustical Sealant for Concealed Joints:
 - a. OSI Sealants, Inc.; Pro-Series SC-175 Rubber Base Sound Sealant.
 - b. Pecora Corporation; BA-98.
 - c. Tremco, Inc.; Tremco Acoustical Sealant.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

- A. Tile Adhesive: Type recommended by tile manufacturer, bearing UL label for Class 0-25 flame spread.
 1. Use adhesives that have a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).
- B. Staples: 5/16-inch long, divergent-point staples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance

with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of acoustical tile ceilings.

1. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Testing Substrates: Before installing adhesively applied tiles on wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.
- B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION, SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

- A. General: Install acoustical tile ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636 and seismic design requirements indicated, per manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."
 1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems according to tested fire-rated design.
- B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:
 1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
 2. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 3. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
 4. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
 5. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
 6. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both structure to which hangers are attached and type

- of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
7. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
 8. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
 9. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
 10. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
 11. Space hangers not more than **48 inches** o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers, unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than **8 inches** from ends of each member.
 12. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications.
- C. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers, without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-place or postinstalled anchors.
- D. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical tile ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.
1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
 2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than **16 inches** o.c. and not more than **3 inches** from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of **1/8 inch in 12 feet**. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
 3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.
- E. Install suspension system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.
- F. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:
1. Install tiles in a basket-weave pattern.
- G. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension system flanges into kerfed edges so tile-to-tile joints are closed by double lap of material.
1. Fit adjoining tile to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tile for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through tile.
 2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tile and moldings, spaced **12 inches** o.c.
 3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 CLEANING

- A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09651

RESILIENT FLOOR TILE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:

- 1. Ceramic floor tile.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each type of floor tile. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
 - 1. Show details of special patterns.
- C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.
- D. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.
- E. Product Schedule: For floor tile.
- F. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer.
- G. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs workers for this Project who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation indicated.
 - 1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by manufacturer for installation techniques required.

- B. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.
 - 1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.
- C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.
 - 1. Build mockups for floor tile including resilient base and accessories.
 - a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following time periods:
 - 1. 48 hours before installation.
 - 2. 48 hours after installation.
- B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.
- C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.
- D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.
- E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Floor Tile: Furnish 1 box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CERAMIC FLOOR TILE

- A. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 1. AB ColorPlus, American Biltrite (Canada) Ltd.
 - 2. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
 - 3. Congoleum Corporation.
 - 4. Mannington Mills, Inc.
 - 5. Tarkett, Inc.
 - 6. Vinylasa Tile, Distributed by American Tile Inc.
- B. Tile Standard: ASTM F 1066, Class 1, solid-color tile or Class 2, through-pattern tile.
- C. Wearing Surface: Smooth or Embossed.
- D. Thickness: 0.125 inch.
- E. Size: 12 by 12 inches.
- F. Colors and Patterns: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.
- C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.
- B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F 710.
 - 1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.

2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
 3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
 4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrates pass testing.
- C. Access Flooring Panels: Remove protective film of oil or other coating using method recommended by access flooring manufacturer.
- D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.
- E. Do not install floor tiles until they are same temperature as space where they are to be installed.
1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.
- F. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.
- B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.
1. Lay tiles square with room axis.
- C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.
1. Lay tiles with grain direction alternating in adjacent tiles (basket-weave pattern).
- D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.
- E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.
- F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent, nonstaining marking device.

- G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in finished floor areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.

- H. Adhere floor tiles to flooring substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of floor tile.

- B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:
 - 1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
 - 2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
 - 3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

- C. Protect floor tile products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

- D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, visible adhesive, and surface blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.
 - 1. Apply two coat(s).

- E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION

SECTION 09912

INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes surface preparation and the application of paint systems on the following interior substrates:

- 1. Steel.
- 2. Galvanized metal.
- 3. Aluminum (not anodized or otherwise coated).
- 4. Wood.
- 5. Gypsum board.
- 6. Plaster.
- 7. Spray-textured ceilings.
- 8. Concrete.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

- 1. Division 5 Sections for shop priming of metal substrates with primers specified in this Section.
- 2. Division 6 Sections for shop priming carpentry with primers specified in this Section.
- 3. Division 8 Sections for factory priming windows and doors with primers specified in this Section.
- 4. Division 9 painting Sections for special-use coatings.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of topcoat product indicated.
- C. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and in each color and gloss of topcoat indicated.
 - 1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches square.
 - 2. Step coats on Samples to show each coat required for system.

3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

D. Product List: For each product indicated, include the following:

1. Cross-reference to paint system and locations of application areas. Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in schedules.
2. Printout of current "MPI Approved Products List" for each product category specified in Part 2, with the proposed product highlighted.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. MPI Standards:

1. Products: Complying with MPI standards indicated and listed in "MPI Approved Products List."
2. Preparation and Workmanship: Comply with requirements in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" for products and paint systems indicated.

B. Mockups: Apply benchmark samples of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify preliminary selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system specified in Part 3.
 - a. Wall and Ceiling Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft.
 - b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.
2. Apply benchmark samples after permanent lighting and other environmental services have been activated.
3. Final approval of color selections will be based on benchmark samples.
 - a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional benchmark samples of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F.
1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
 2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F.
- B. Do not apply paints when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

1.7 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that are from same production run (batch mix) as materials applied and that are packaged for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Quantity: Furnish an additional 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. of each material and color applied.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. Benjamin Moore & Co.
 - 2. Bennette Paint Mfg. Co., Inc.
 - 3. BLP Mobile Paint Manufacturing.
 - 4. California Paints.
 - 5. ChemRex.
 - 6. Cloverdale Paint.
 - 7. Color Wheel Paints & Coatings.
 - 8. Columbia Paint & Coatings.
 - 9. Coronado Paint.
 - 10. Davis Paint Company.
 - 11. Diamond Vogel Paints.
 - 12. Dunn-Edwards Corporation.
 - 13. Durant Paints Inc.
 - 14. Duron, Inc.
 - 15. Envirocoat Technologies Inc.
 - 16. Farrell-Calhoun.
 - 17. Flex Bon Paints.
 - 18. Frazee Paint.
 - 19. General Paint.
 - 20. Griggs Paint.

21. Hallman Lindsay Quality Paints.
22. Hirshfield's, Inc.
23. ICI Devoe (Canada).
24. ICI Paints.
25. Insl-x.
26. Iowa Paint Manufacturing Company, Inc.
27. Kelly-Moore Paints.
28. Kryton Canada Corporation.
29. Kwal-Howells Paint.
30. M.A.B. Paints.
31. McCormick Paints.
32. Miller Paint.
33. Mills Paint.
34. Northern Paint.
35. PARA Paints.
36. Parker Paint Mfg. Co. Inc.
37. Porter Paints.
38. PPG Architectural Finishes, Inc.
39. Rodda Paint Co.
40. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
41. Sico, Inc.
42. Sigma Coatings.
43. Smiland Paint Company.
44. Spectra-Tone.
45. Sterling Paint.
46. Tamms Industries, Inc.
47. Tower Paint.
48. Vista Paint.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. Material Compatibility:

1. Provide materials for use within each paint system that are compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, provide products recommended in writing by manufacturers of topcoat for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

B. VOC Content of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide products that comply with the following limits for VOC content, exclusive of colorants added to a tint base, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24); these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:

1. Flat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
2. Nonflat Paints, Coatings, and Primers: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
3. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC not more than 250 g/L.

4. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
 5. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
 6. Shellacs, Pigmented: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
 7. Flat Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 50 g/L.
 8. Nonflat Topcoat Paints: VOC content of not more than 150 g/L.
 9. Anti-Corrosive and Anti-Rust Paints Applied to Ferrous Metals: VOC not more than 250 g/L.
 10. Floor Coatings: VOC not more than 100 g/L.
 11. Shellacs, Clear: VOC not more than 730 g/L.
 12. Shellacs, Pigmented: VOC not more than 550 g/L.
 13. Primers, Sealers, and Undercoaters: VOC content of not more than 200 g/L.
 14. Dry-Fog Coatings: VOC content of not more than 400 g/L.
 15. Zinc-Rich Industrial Maintenance Primers: VOC content of not more than 340 g/L.
 16. Pre-Treatment Wash Primers: VOC content of not more than 420 g/L.
- C. Chemical Components of Field-Applied Interior Paints and Coatings: Provide topcoat paints and anti-corrosive and anti-rust paints applied to ferrous metals that comply with the following chemical restrictions; these requirements do not apply to paints and coatings that are applied in a fabrication or finishing shop:
1. Aromatic Compounds: Paints and coatings shall not contain more than 1.0 percent by weight of total aromatic compounds (hydrocarbon compounds containing one or more benzene rings).
 2. Restricted Components: Paints and coatings shall not contain any of the following:
 - a. Acrolein.
 - b. Acrylonitrile.
 - c. Antimony.
 - d. Benzene.
 - e. Butyl benzyl phthalate.
 - f. Cadmium.
 - g. Di (2-ethylhexyl) phthalate.
 - h. Di-n-butyl phthalate.
 - i. Di-n-octyl phthalate.
 - j. 1,2-dichlorobenzene.
 - k. Diethyl phthalate.
 - l. Dimethyl phthalate.
 - m. Ethylbenzene.
 - n. Formaldehyde.
 - o. Hexavalent chromium.
 - p. Isophorone.
 - q. Lead.
 - r. Mercury.
 - s. Methyl ethyl ketone.
 - t. Methyl isobutyl ketone.
 - u. Methylene chloride.
 - v. Naphthalene.
 - w. Toluene (methylbenzene).

- x. 1,1,1-trichloroethane.
- y. Vinyl chloride.

D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 PRIMERS/SEALERS

- A. Interior Latex Primer/Sealer: MPI #50.
- B. Interior Alkyd Primer/Sealer: MPI #45.

- C. Wood-Knot Sealer: Sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for use in paint systems indicated.

2.4 METAL PRIMERS

- A. Alkyd Anticorrosive Metal Primer: MPI #79.
- B. Quick-Drying Alkyd Metal Primer: MPI #76.
- C. Rust-Inhibitive Primer (Water Based): MPI #107.
- D. Cementitious Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #26.
- E. Waterborne Galvanized-Metal Primer: MPI #134.
- F. Vinyl Wash Primer: MPI #80.
- G. Quick-Drying Primer for Aluminum: MPI #95.

2.5 WOOD PRIMERS

- A. Interior Latex-Based Wood Primer: MPI #39.

2.6 LATEX PAINTS

- A. Interior Latex (Flat): MPI #53 (Gloss Level 1).
- B. Interior Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #44 (Gloss Level 2).
- C. Interior Latex (Eggshell): MPI #52 (Gloss Level 3).
- D. Interior Latex (Satin): MPI #43 (Gloss Level 4).
- E. Interior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #54 (Gloss Level 5).

- F. Interior Latex (Gloss): MPI #114 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).
- G. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Flat): MPI #143 (Gloss Level 1).
- H. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #144 (Gloss Level 2).
- I. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Eggshell): MPI #145 (Gloss Level 3).
- J. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex (Semigloss): MPI #147 (Gloss Level 5).
- K. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Low Sheen): MPI #138 (Gloss Level 2).
- L. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Eggshell): MPI #139 (Gloss Level 3).
- M. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Satin): MPI #140 (Gloss Level 4).
- N. High-Performance Architectural Latex (Semigloss): MPI #141 (Gloss Level 5).
- O. Exterior Latex (Flat): MPI #10 (Gloss Level 1).
- P. Exterior Latex (Semigloss): MPI #11 (Gloss Level 5).
- Q. Exterior Latex (Gloss): MPI #119 (Gloss Level 6, except minimum gloss of 65 units at 60 deg).

2.7 ALKYD PAINTS

- A. Interior Alkyd (Flat): MPI #49 (Gloss Level 1).
- B. Interior Alkyd (Eggshell): MPI #51 (Gloss Level 3).
- C. Interior Alkyd (Semigloss): MPI #47 (Gloss Level 5).
- D. Interior Alkyd (Gloss): MPI #48 (Gloss Level 6).

2.8 QUICK-DRYING ENAMELS

- A. Quick-Drying Enamel (Semigloss): MPI #81 (Gloss Level 5).
- B. Quick-Drying Enamel (High Gloss): MPI #96 (Gloss Level 7).

2.9 TEXTURED COATING

- A. Latex Stucco and Masonry Textured Coating: MPI #42.

2.10 DRY FOG/FALL COATINGS

- A. Latex Dry Fog/Fall: MPI #118.
- B. Waterborne Dry Fall: MPI #133.
- C. Interior Alkyd Dry Fog/Fall: MPI #55.

2.11 ALUMINUM PAINT

- A. Aluminum Paint: MPI #1.

2.12 FLOOR COATINGS

- A. Interior Concrete Floor Stain: MPI #58.
- B. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Water Based): MPI #99.
- C. Interior/Exterior Clear Concrete Floor Sealer (Solvent Based): MPI #104.
- D. Interior/Exterior Latex Floor and Porch Paint (Low Gloss): MPI #60 (maximum Gloss Level 3).
- E. Exterior/Interior Alkyd Floor Enamel (Gloss): MPI #27 (Gloss Level 6).

- 1. Additives: Manufacturer's standard additive to increase skid resistance of painted surface.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of work.
- B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:
 - 1. Concrete: 12 percent.
 - 2. Masonry (Clay and CMU): 12 percent.
 - 3. Wood: 15 percent.
 - 4. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.
 - 5. Plaster: 12 percent.

- C. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility with existing finishes and primers.
- D. Begin coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected and surfaces are dry.
 - 1. Beginning coating application constitutes Contractor's acceptance of substrates and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual" applicable to substrates indicated.
- B. Remove plates, machined surfaces, and similar items already in place that are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.
 - 1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection if any.
 - 2. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
- C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.
 - 1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers as required to produce paint systems indicated.
- D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- E. Clay Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content of surfaces or alkalinity of mortar joints to be painted exceed that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- F. Concrete Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.
- G. Steel Substrates: Remove rust and loose mill scale. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer.
- H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal fabricated from coil stock by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.
- I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove surface oxidation.

- J. Wood Substrates:
 - 1. Scrape and clean knots, and apply coat of knot sealer before applying primer.
 - 2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and dust off.
 - 3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
 - 4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

- K. Gypsum Board Substrates: Do not begin paint application until finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

- L. Plaster Substrates: Do not begin paint application until plaster is fully cured and dry.

- M. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates: Do not begin paint application until surfaces are dry.

3.3 APPLICATION

- A. Apply paints according to manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
 - 2. Paint surfaces behind movable equipment and furniture same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed equipment or furniture with prime coat only.
 - 3. Paint front and backsides of access panels, removable or hinged covers, and similar hinged items to match exposed surfaces.

- B. Tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Tint undercoats to match color of topcoat, but provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

- C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

- D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

- E. Painting Mechanical and Electrical Work: Paint items exposed in equipment rooms and occupied spaces including, but not limited to, the following:
 - 1. Mechanical Work:
 - a. Uninsulated metal piping.
 - b. Uninsulated plastic piping.
 - c. Pipe hangers and supports.
 - d. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

- e. Visible portions of internal surfaces of metal ducts, without liner, behind air inlets and outlets.
- f. Duct, equipment, and pipe insulation having cotton or canvas insulation covering or other paintable jacket material.
- g. Mechanical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

2. Electrical Work:

- a. Switchgear.
- b. Panelboards.
- c. Electrical equipment that is indicated to have a factory-primed finish for field painting.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing of Paint Materials: Owner reserves the right to invoke the following procedure at any time and as often as Owner deems necessary during the period when paints are being applied:

- 1. Owner will engage the services of a qualified testing agency to sample paint materials being used. Samples of material delivered to Project site will be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
- 2. Testing agency will perform tests for compliance with product requirements.
- 3. Owner may direct Contractor to stop applying paints if test results show materials being used do not comply with product requirements. Contractor shall remove noncomplying-paint materials from Project site, pay for testing, and repaint surfaces painted with rejected materials. Contractor will be required to remove rejected materials from previously painted surfaces if, on repainting with complying materials, the two paints are incompatible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

- A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.
- B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.
- C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.
- D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 INTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Concrete Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 3.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
2. Latex Over Sealer System: MPI INT 3.1A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
3. Alkyd System: MPI INT 3.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 3.1M.
 - a. Prime Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 3.1C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.

B. Concrete Substrates, Traffic Surfaces:

1. Latex Floor Enamel System: MPI INT 3.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
 - c. Topcoat: Interior/exterior latex floor and porch paint (low gloss).
2. Alkyd Floor Enamel System: MPI INT 3.2B.
 - a. Prime Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
 - c. Topcoat: Exterior/interior alkyd floor enamel (gloss).
3. Concrete Stain System: MPI INT 3.2E.

- a. First Coat: Interior concrete floor stain.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior concrete floor stain.
4. Clear Sealer System: MPI INT 3.2F.
 - a. First Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (solvent based).
 - b. Topcoat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (solvent based).
 5. Water-Based Clear Sealer System: MPI INT 3.2G.
 - a. First Coat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
 - b. Topcoat: Interior/exterior clear concrete floor sealer (water based).
- C. Clay-Masonry Substrates:
1. Latex System: MPI INT 4.1A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 4.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 3. Latex Aggregate System: MPI INT 4.1B.
 - a. Prime Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: As recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer.
 - c. Topcoat: Latex stucco and masonry textured coating.
 4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 4.1M.
 - a. Prime Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 4.1L.
 - a. Prime Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- D. CMU Substrates:
1. Latex System: MPI INT 4.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 2. Alkyd System: MPI INT 4.2C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 3. Alkyd Over Latex Sealer System: MPI INT 4.2N.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
 - b. Sealer Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - c. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - d. Topcoat: Interior alkyd .
 4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 4.2E.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 4.2D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior/exterior latex block filler.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- E. Steel Substrates:
 1. Quick-Drying Enamel System: MPI INT 5.1A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying alkyd metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Quick-drying enamel matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Quick-drying enamel.
 2. Water-Based Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.1C.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Topcoat: **Latex dry fog/fall or Waterborne dry fall.**
 3. Alkyd Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.1D.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior alkyd dry fog/fall.
 4. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 5.1Q.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.

- c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 - 5. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.1E.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 - 6. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 5.1M.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint.
 - c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint.
 - 7. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 5.1S.
 - a. Prime Coat: Rust-inhibitive primer (water based).
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 - 8. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.1R.
 - a. Prime Coat: **Alkyd anticorrosive or Quick-drying alkyd** metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- F. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:
- 1. Water-Based Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.3H.
 - a. Prime Coat: Waterborne dry fall.
 - b. Topcoat: Waterborne dry fall.
 - 2. Alkyd Dry-Fall System: MPI INT 5.3F.
 - a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior alkyd dry fog/fall.
 - 3. Latex System: MPI INT 5.3A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 - 4. Latex Over Waterborne Primer System: MPI INT 5.3J.
 - a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.

5. Alkyd System: MPI INT 5.3C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.

6. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 5.3G.
 - a. Prime Coat: Cementitious galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint.
 - c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint.

7. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 5.3N.
 - a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.

8. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.3M.
 - a. Prime Coat: Waterborne galvanized-metal primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.

- G. Aluminum (Not Anodized or Otherwise Coated) Substrates:
 1. Latex System: MPI INT 5.4H.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.

 2. Alkyd Over Vinyl Wash Primer System: MPI INT 5.4A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.

 3. Alkyd Over Quick-Drying Primer System: MPI INT 5.4J.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.

 4. Aluminum Paint System: MPI INT 5.4D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Vinyl wash primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Aluminum paint.
 - c. Topcoat: Aluminum paint.

5. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 5.4G.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 6. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 5.4F.
 - a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying primer for aluminum.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- H. Dressed Lumber Substrates: Including **architectural woodwork**.
1. Latex System: MPI INT 6.3T.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 2. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 6.3U.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 3. Alkyd System: MPI INT 6.3B.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 6.3V.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 6.3A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- I. Dimension Lumber Substrates, Nontraffic Surfaces.
1. Latex System: MPI INT 6.2D.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.

- b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
- 2. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 6.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 - 3. Alkyd System: MPI INT 6.2C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 - 4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 6.2L.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex-based wood primer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 - 5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 6.2B.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.
- J. Gypsum Board Substrates:
- 1. Latex System: MPI INT 9.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex **primer/sealer or matching topcoat.**
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
 - 2. Alkyd Over Latex Primer System: MPI INT 9.2C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
 - 3. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 9.2M.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
 - 4. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 9.2B.

- a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
- b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
- c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.

K. Plaster Substrates:

1. Latex System: MPI INT 9.2A.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
2. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 9.2K.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
3. Alkyd Over Latex Primer System: MPI INT 9.2C.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd.
4. Institutional Low-Odor/VOC Latex System: MPI INT 9.2M.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Institutional low-odor/VOC interior latex.
5. High-Performance Architectural Latex System: MPI INT 9.2B.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: High-performance architectural latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: High-performance architectural latex.

L. Spray-Textured Ceiling Substrates:

1. Latex (Flat) System: MPI INT 9.1A, spray applied.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior latex (flat).
2. Latex System: MPI INT 9.1E, spray applied.
 - a. Prime Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior latex matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior latex.
3. Latex Over Alkyd Primer System: MPI INT 9.1B.

- a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Topcoat: Interior latex.
4. Alkyd (Flat) System: MPI INT 9.1C.
- a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd (flat).
 - b. Topcoat: Interior alkyd (flat).
5. Alkyd System: MPI INT 9.1D.
- a. Prime Coat: Interior alkyd primer/sealer.
 - b. Intermediate Coat: Interior alkyd matching topcoat.
 - c. Topcoat: Interior alkyd

END OF DOCUMENT

DIVISION **10**

SPECIALTIES

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

Section 10400

Fabric Awnings

Part 1: General

1.01 Summary

- A. Section includes: fabric covering(s), structure(s) for Commercial/Residential.

Applications with fabric specifically for shade coverings. The fabric awning manufacturer/contractor shall be responsible for design, engineering, fabrication and installation specified here within. The intent of this specification is to have one manufacturer responsible for all functions.

1.02 References

- A. ASTM – A500 structural tubing in rounds, squares and shapes specified.
B. ASTM – A325 high strength bolts for joint attachments.
C. ASTM – 84 flame resistant class 1 or A rating.
D. NFPA – 701-99test method II.
E. FAA – 25.853 aviation
F. Title – 19 California State Fire Marshal

1.03 Submittals

- A. Project data: provide project drawing(s) showing all structural heights, connections, fabric type and grade, slope of structure.
B. Provide a 12" x 12" fabric sample with specifications.
C. Warranty on fabric selected.

Part 2 All Products must meet the required wind loads per the currently adopted IBC code.

1.04 Awning Fabrics

A. Manufactures

- 1. Sunbrella – Marine, Firesist, Upholstery.**
- 2. Dickson – Orchestra.**
- 3. Weblon – Coastline, Vanguard.**
- 4. Sattler – Outdura, Elements.**

1.05 Awning Frames

A. Aluminum – solids or extrusions

- 1. Tubes, squares, rectangular, & rounds.**
- 2. Radius edges, .125 thicknesses.**
- 3. Welded joints (4 sides), smooth joints.**
- 4. Finish and color as selected, TBD.**

B. Steel - solids or hollow

- 1. Tubes, solids & rounds.**
- 2. Radius edges, .125 thicknesses.**
- 3. Welded joints (4 sides), smooth joints.**
- 4. Finish and color as selected, TBD.**

Part 3 Execution

1.06 Awning Fabrication

A. Fabric

- 1. Cutting to be by method of hot knife or scissors.**
- 2. Seams to be by method of seam welding with adhesive tape.**
- 3. Thread to be UV-stabilized polyethylene Gore-Tenara.**
- 4. Fabric edges to be hemmed folded and stitched.**
- 5. Fabric to be reinforcing wear points with webbing as manufacturing standards.**
- 6. Provide 12" x 12" sample of selected fabric(s).**
- 7. Color and type to be selected, TBD.**

1.07 Frame Fabrication

A. Frame

- 1. Preamble frame in shop to the greatest extent possible.**

2. Form bent corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.
3. Weld joints continuously. Finish welds and surfaces smooth and blended.
4. Apply primers at joint connections as needed.

1.08 Installation shall include all required hardware to be a complete system meeting the wind load requirements of the IBC.

A. Manufacturers/Installer Qualifications.

1. Bidders must show evidence of at least five (5) projects installed with similar size and design.
2. Must have min. ten years (10) experience with similar type projects
3. Example: C. Bel Awnings, Inc. 3139 Tchoupitoulas St, New Orleans, La. 70115 504-891-3768. www.belawnings.com
4. Installation will follow industry standards (IFAI).

1.09 Project Conditions

A. Field Measurements

1. Coordinate actual dimensions of construction affecting work.
2. Prior to final fabrication, jobsite measurements by installer.
3. Adjust to actual measurements.

B. Fasteners

1. All bolts, fittings, hardware and anchors must be corrosion resistant, weather resistant and none staining proof where exposed to view.

Part 4 Conclusion

- A. Install all structures and fabric in accordance with industry standards by manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Submit final shop drawings per final structure.

End of Section

SECTION 10440

INTERIOR SIGNAGE

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

- A. Interior signage of the following types:
 - 1. ADA compliant interior signage.
 - 2. Interior signage plaque modules.
 - 3. Interior signage overhead modules.
 - 4. Interior signage main directories.
 - 5. Interior signage secondary directories.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

- A. Section 10410 - Directories.
- B. Section 10420 - Plaques.
- C. Section 10430 - Exterior Signage.

1.3 REFERENCES

- A. ICC/ANSI A117.1 - Accessible and Useable Buildings and Facilities; 1998.
- B. USATBCB - Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA), Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities (ADAAG).

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Submit under provisions of Section 01300.
- B. Product Data: Manufacturer's data sheets on each product to be used, including:
 - 1. Manufacturer's descriptive literature.
 - 2. Installation methods.
- C. Shop Drawings: List sign styles, lettering, locations and dimensions of each interior sign.
- D. Selection Samples: For each finish product specified, two complete sets of color chips representing manufacturer's full range of available colors and patterns.
- E. Verification Samples: Two full size samples, representing type, style and colors including method of attachment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with requirements of ICC/ANSI A117.1 and ADAAG.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Store products in manufacturer's unopened packaging until ready for installation.
- B. Store and dispose of solvent-based materials, and materials used with solvent-based materials, in accordance with requirements of local authorities having jurisdiction.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

- A. Maintain environmental conditions (temperature, humidity, and ventilation) within limits recommended by manufacturer for optimum results.
- B. Do not install products under environmental conditions outside manufacturer's absolute limits.

PART 2 PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Acceptable Manufacturer: Innerface Sign Systems, Inc.; 5849 Peachtree Road, Atlanta, GA 30341. ASD. Tel: Phone: (770) 921-5566, Toll Free: (800) 445-4796. Fax: (770) 279-1327. Email: Sales@innerfacesign.com.
- B. Substitutions: Not permitted.
- C. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with provisions of Section 01600.

2.2 INTERIOR SIGNS

- A. Standard Products: The following interior sign systems shall be provided in locations indicated.
- B. Signature Series.
 - 1. Plaque Modules: Flush modular frames with flush modular inserts.
 - a. Module:
 - 1) Style/Overall Size:
 - (a) Module 1.0; 2.25 by 4.5 inches (57 by 114 mm).
 - (b) Module 2.0; 4.5 by 4.5 inches (114 by 114 mm).
 - (c) Module 2.1 and 2.11; 4.5 by 4.5 inches (114 by 114 mm).
 - (d) Module 2.2 and 2.22; 4.5 by 4.5 inches (114 by 114 mm).
 - (e) Module 2.6; 4.5 by 4.5 inches (114 by 114 mm).
 - (f) Module 3.0; 2.25 by 7 inches (57 by 177 mm).
 - (g) Module 3.5; 2.25 by 7 inches (57 by 177 mm).
 - (h) Module 3.7; 2.25 by 7 inches (57 by 177 mm).

- (i) Module 4.0; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (j) Module 4.1 and 4.11; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (k) Module 4.2 and 4.22; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (l) Module 4.1E; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (m) Module 4.2E; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (n) Module 4.3 and 4.33; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (o) Module 4.4 and 4.44; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (p) Module 4.55; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (q) Module 4.5; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (r) Module 4.6; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (s) Module 4.7; 7 by 7 inches (177 by 177 mm).
 - (t) Module 4.8 and 4.88; 11.75 by 7 inches (298 by 177 mm).
 - (u) Module 4.99; 11.75 by 7 inches (298 by 177 mm).
 - (v) Module 5.0; 2.25 by 8.75 inches (57 by 222 mm).
 - (w) Module 5.3; 2.25 by 8.75 inches (57 by 222 mm).
 - (x) Module 5.5; 2.25 by 8.75 inches (57 by 222 mm).
 - (y) Module 5.5PW; 8.75 by 2.25 inches (222 by 57 mm).
 - (z) Module 5.6; 2.25 by 8.75 inches (57 by 222 mm).
 - (aa) Module 5.7; 2.25 by 8.75 inches (57 by 222 mm).
 - (bb) Module 6.0; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (cc) Module 6.0; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (dd) Module 6.1 and 6.11; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (ee) Module 6.2 and 6.22; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (ff) Module 6.3 and 6.33; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (gg) Module 6.4 and 6.44; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (hh) Module 6.5; 8.75 by 8.75 inches (222 by 222 mm).
 - (ii) Module 7.0; 7 by 11.75 inches (179 by 298 mm).
 - (jj) Module 7.1; 7 by 11.75 inches (179 by 298 mm).
 - (kk) Module 7.5; 7 by 11.75 inches (179 by 298 mm).
 - (ll) Module 7.24; 7 by 24 inches (179 by 610 mm).
 - (mm) Module 8.0; 11.75 by 11.75 inches (298 by 298 mm).
 - (nn) Module 8.11; 11.56 by 9.125 inches (294 by 232 mm).
 - (oo) Module 8.12; 17 by 9.56 inches (432 by 246 mm).
 - (pp) Module 8.14; 17 by 9.56 inches (432 by 246 mm).
 - (qq) Module 8.5; 11.75 by 11.75 inches (298 by 298 mm).
 - (rr) Module 8.86; 11.75 by 18 inches (298 by 557 mm).
 - (ss) Module 8.99; 12 by 12 inches (305 by 305 mm).
 - (tt) Module 9.0; 16 by 16 inches (406 by 406 mm).
 - (uu) Module 9.1; 18 by 18 inches (457 by 457 mm).
- 2) Letter Color
- (a) Black
 - (b) White
 - (c) Custom as selected.
- 3) Sign Color
- (a) #1 Tan
 - (b) # 2 Brown
 - (c) #3 Light Gray
 - (d) #4 Burgundy
 - (e) #5 Slate

- (f) #6 Green
 - (g) #7 Blue
 - (h) #8 Black
 - (i) #9 Graphite
 - (j) #10 Teal
 - (k) #11 Ivory
 - (l) #12 Laurel Green
 - (m) #13 Custom color as selected.
 - 4) Corners
 - (a) Square
 - (b) Radius
 - 5) Mounting
 - (a) Flat Surface Mount
 - (1) Smooth Surface
 - (2) Textured Surface
 - (3) Glass Mount
 - (b) Desk Top Mount
 - (1) T Bracket
 - (2) Angles Stand
 - (c) Perpendicular Mount
 - (1) Single View Mount
 - (2) Double View Mount
 - (d) Ceiling Mount
 - (1) Single View Mount
 - (2) Double View Mount
 - (e) Partition Mount
 - (f) Stanchion Mount
 - (1) Single View Mount
 - (2) Double View Mount
 - 6) ADA Options
 - (a) Single Unit
 - (b) Innerdot with Modular Insert
2. Secondary Directory Modules: Flush modular frames with flush modular inserts.
- a. Module:
 - 1) Style/Overall Size:
 - (a) Module 10.0; 11.75 by 11.75 inches (298 by 298 mm).
 - (b) Module 11.0; 18.31 by 11.75 inches (465 by 298 mm).
 - (c) Module 12.0; 25.13 by 11.75 inches (638 by 298 mm).
 - (d) Module 10.1; 11.75 by 18 inches (298 by 457 mm).
 - (e) Module 11.1; 18.31 by 18 inches (465 by 457 mm).
 - (f) Module 12.1; 25.12 by 18 inches (638 by 457 mm).
 - (g) Module 13.0; 31.44 by 11.75 inches (798 by 298 mm).
 - (h) Module 13.1; 31.69 by 18 inches (805 by 457 mm).
 - (i) Module 14.0; 18 by 18 inches (457 by 457 mm).
 - (j) Module 14.1; 18 by 24 inches (457 by 610 mm).
 - (k) Module 15.0; 28 by 18 inches (711 by 457 mm).
 - (l) Module 15.1; 28 by 24 inches (711 by 610 mm).
 - (m) Module 16.0; 38 by 18 inches (965 by 457 mm).

- (n) Module 16.1; 38 by 24 inches (965 by 610 mm).
- 2) Letter Color
 - (a) Black
 - (b) White
 - (c) Custom as selected.
- 3) Sign Color
 - (a) #1 Tan
 - (b) # 2 Brown
 - (c) #3 Light Gray
 - (d) #4 Burgundy
 - (e) #5 Slate
 - (f) #6 Green
 - (g) #7 Blue
 - (h) #8 Black
 - (i) #9 Graphite
 - (j) #10 Teal
 - (k) #11 Ivory
 - (l) #12 Laurel Green
 - (m) #13 Custom color as selected.
- 4) Corners
 - (a) Square
 - (b) Radius
- 5) Mounting
 - (a) Flat Surface Mount
 - (b) Stanchion Mount
- 3. Main Directory Modules: Flush modular frames with flush modular inserts.
 - a. Module:
 - 1) Style/Overall Size:
 - (a) Module 17.25; 20.5 by 12.88 by 2.5 inches (521 by 327 by 64 mm).
 - (b) Module 17.50L; 32.5 by 13.19 by 2.5 inches (805 by 335 by 64 mm).
 - (c) Module 17.50W; 20.5 by 25.69 by 2.5 inches (521 by 653 by 64 mm).
 - (d) Module 17.100; 32.5 by 25.69 by 2.5 inches (805 by 653 by 64 mm).
 - (e) Module 17.150; 32.5 by 38.19 by 2.5 inches (805 by 970 by 64 mm).
 - (f) Module 17.200; 32.5 by 50.69 by 2.5 inches (826 by 1288 by 64 mm).
 - 2) Letter Color
 - (a) Black
 - (b) White
 - (c) Custom as selected.
 - 3) Sign Color
 - (a) #1 Tan
 - (b) # 2 Brown
 - (c) #3 Light Gray
 - (d) #4 Burgundy

- (e) #5 Slate
 - (f) #6 Green
 - (g) #7 Blue
 - (h) #8 Black
 - (i) #9 Graphite
 - (j) #10 Teal
 - (k) #11 Ivory
 - (l) #12 Laurel Green
 - (m) #13 Custom color as selected.
- 4) Corners
 - (a) Square
 - (b) Radius
 - 5) Mounting
 - (a) Flat Surface Mount
 - (b) Pedestal
4. Special Modules: Flush modular frames with flush modular inserts.
- a. Module:
 - 1) Style/Overall Size:
 - (a) Module 25.0; File Holder without sign band. 11.75W by 8FH by 10BH by 2D inches (298 by 203 by 254 by 51 mm).
 - (b) Module 25.1; File Holder with sign band. 11.75W by 8FH by 10BH by 2D inches (298 by 203 by 254 by 51 mm).
 - (c) Module 26.0; Paper grip. 5.5 by 1.75 inches (140 by 44 mm).
 - (d) Module 28.0; Letter guide. 18 by 24 inches (457 by 610 mm).
 - (e) Module 29.0; Fire Evacuation Plan. 14.0 by 11.5 inches (356 by 292 mm).
 - 2) Letter Color
 - (a) Black
 - (b) White
 - (c) Custom as selected.
 - 3) Sign Color
 - (a) #1 Tan
 - (b) # 2 Brown
 - (c) #3 Light Gray
 - (d) #4 Burgundy
 - (e) #5 Slate
 - (f) #6 Green
 - (g) #7 Blue
 - (h) #8 Black
 - (i) #9 Graphite
 - (j) #10 Teal
 - (k) #11 Ivory
 - (l) #12 Laurel Green
 - (m) #13 Custom color as selected.
 - 4) Corners
 - (a) Square
 - (b) Radius

- 5) Mounting
 - (a) Flat Surface Mount
 - (b) No Mount
5. Overhead Directory Modules: Flush modular frames with flush modular inserts.
 - a. Module:
 - 1) Style/Overall Size:
 - (a) Module CM 30.2R, 30.3R, 30.5R; 11.5 by 22.5 inches (292 by 572 mm).
 - (b) Module WM 40.2R; 11.5 by 22.5 inches (292 by 572 mm).
 - (c) Module CM 30.2S, 30.3S, 30.5S; 11.5 by 22.5 inches (292 by 572 mm).
 - (d) Module WM 40.2S; 11.5 by 22.5 inches (292 by 572 mm).
 - (e) Module CM 31.2R, 31.3R, 31.5R; 11.5 by 46.5 inches (292 by 1181 mm).
 - (f) Module WM 41.2R; 11.5 by 46.5 inches (292 by 1181 mm).
 - (g) Module CM 31.2S, 31.3S, 31.5S; 11.5 by 46.5 inches (292 by 1181 mm).
 - (h) Module WM 41.2S; 11.5 by 46.5 inches (292 by 1181 mm).
 - (i) Module CM 32.2R, 32.3R, 32.5R; 11.5 by 93 inches (292 by 2362 mm).
 - (j) Module WM 42.2R; 11.5 by 93 inches (292 by 2362 mm).
 - (k) Module CM 32.2S, 32.3S, 32.5S; 11.5 by 93 inches (292 by 2362 mm).
 - (l) Module WM 42.2S; 11.5 by 93 inches (292 by 2362 mm).
 - 2) Letter Color
 - (a) Black
 - (b) White
 - (c) Custom as selected.
 - 3) Sign Color
 - (a) #1 Tan
 - (b) # 2 Brown
 - (c) #3 Light Gray
 - (d) #4 Burgundy
 - (e) #5 Slate
 - (f) #6 Green
 - (g) #7 Blue
 - (h) #8 Black
 - (i) #9 Graphite
 - (j) #10 Teal
 - (k) #11 Ivory
 - (l) #12 Laurel Green
 - (m) #13 Custom color as selected.
 - 4) Corners
 - (a) S-Square
 - (b) R-Radius
 - 5) Mounting
 - (a) Flat Surface Mount
 - (b) Ceiling Mount

- (1) Single View Mount
- (2) Double View Mount

C. Construction General:

1. Plaques and Secondary Directories: Routed 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick styrene backplate with a routed 1/8 inch (1.6 mm) thick non-glare acrylic polished edge faceplate. Faceplate edge is routed to a 1/8" bullnose and hand polished. Faceplate is reverse screened using Nazdar 9700 Series screen print ink. Backplate is assembled to the faceplate with 3M VHB double sided foam tape .05 inch (1.3 mm) thick in various widths.
2. Wall Mounts, Doorbands and Door Tags Reverse painted 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick non-glare laser cut acrylic with polished edge. Painted with Matthews acrylic polyurethane paints. Laminated on the reverse side with 1 mil clear polyester over laminating film with adhesive. Surface applied high performance vinyl copy.
3. Ceiling Mounted Directional Units:
 - a. 3/8 inch (10 mm) thick unit: 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick black gloss acrylic laminated on both sides with 1/32 inch (.08 mm) vertical grade laminate using 3M water-base adhesive. Mounting hardware includes a dark bronze aluminum and a galvanized steel u-channel, galvanized decking screws, post binding screws, and threaded 1/4 inch (6 mm)-20 x 4 inch (102 mm) long round head zinc plated steel screws. Surface applied high performance vinyl copy.
 - b. 1-3/4 inch (102 mm) thick unit: Hand routed 1-1/2 inch (12.5 mm) thick fiber core, laminated with 1/32 inch (.08 mm) thick vertical grade laminate using 3M water-base contact adhesive. Mounting hardware includes a dark bronze aluminum and a galvanized steel u-channel, galvanized decking screws, post binding screws, and threaded 1/4 inch (6 mm)-20 x 4 inch (102 mm) round head zinc plated steel screws. Surface applied high performance vinyl copy.
 - c. 3 inch (76 mm) thick unit: Hand fabricated box made of 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick and 3/4 inch thick Luan with 3 inch (76 mm) radius solid wood corners using 0420 yellow wood glue and staples. Laminated with 1/32 inch (.08 mm) thick vertical grade laminate using 3M water-base contact adhesive. Mounting hardware includes a dark bronze aluminum and a galvanized steel u-channel, galvanized decking screws, post binding screws, and threaded 1/4 inch (6 mm)-20 x 4 inch (102 mm) long round head zinc plated steel screws. Surface applied high performance vinyl copy.
4. Main Directories: Hand fabricated box made of 5/8 inch (16 mm) and 1 inch (25 mm) thick fiberboard, 3/4 inch (102 mm) luan, staples, yellow wood glue, vertical grade laminate and 3M dark red solvent-based contact adhesive. Faceplate is 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick clear acrylic with vertical grade laminate and 3M Isotech tape with surface screened copy. Faceplate is attached to box with Velcro tape or a black continuous hinge. Inside of box has 26 gauge steel sign blank painted black. Cleat mounting hardware includes 3/4 inch thick fiberboard interlocking cleats, 1/4 inch (6 mm)-20 x 4 inch (102 mm) flat head zinc plated steel screws.
5. Mounts:

- a. Standard Perpendicular Mount Frames: CNC routed 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick styrene backplate with a laser cut 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) non-glare acrylic polished edge faceplate. Faceplate is reverse screened using Nazdar 9700 Series screen print ink. Backplate is assembled to faceplate with 3M VHB double sided tape of approximately .05 inch (1.3 mm) thickness in various widths. Mounting includes T-shaped aluminum extrusion painted black and R-Tite rivets or post binding screws.
 - b. Standard Ceiling Mount Frames: CNC routed 1/4 inch (102 mm) thick black gloss acrylic backplate with a laser cut 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick non-glare acrylic polished edge faceplate. Faceplate is reverse screened using Nazdar 9700 Series screen print ink. Backplate is assembled to faceplate with 3M VHB double sided foam tape of approximately .05 inch (1.3 mm) thickness in various widths. Mounting hardware includes a dark bronze aluminum and a galvanized steel u-channel, galvanized decking screws, post binding screws, and threaded 1/4 inch (6 mm)-20 x 4 inch (102 mm) round head zinc plated steel screws.
 - c. Standard Desk Top Mount Frames: CNC routed 1/4 inch thick (6 mm) gloss black acrylic backplate with a laser cut 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick non-glare acrylic polished edge faceplate. Faceplate is reverse screened using Nazdar 9700 Series screen print ink and is assembled to the acrylic backplate with 3M VHB double sided foam tape of approximately .05 inch (1.3 mm) thickness in various widths. Frame assembly is attached at the backplate to 4 inch (102 mm) thick gloss black acrylic angled baseplate with IPS weld-on #4 adhesive. Four 3/8 inch (10 mm) diameter felt pads are affixed to the underside of the baseplate.
6. Vinyl Inserts and Main Directory Strips
 - a. Vinyl Inserts: Calendered matte/matte .010 mil thick vinyl diecut with a Patented punched keyhole for removal. Lettered with high performance vinyl.
 - b. Main Directory Strips: Routed 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick standard grade laminate or laser cut 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick back sprayed acrylic using Matthews polyurethane acrylic paints with surface applied high performance vinyl copy. Acrylic strips are laminated on the reverse side with 1 mil clear polyester over laminating film. Strips have 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) or 3/4 inch (102 mm) wide black magnetic tape applied to back for mounting.
 7. Innerdot: 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) diameter clear acrylic raster placed in wholes drilled to 1/32 inch (.08 mm) deep in faceplate. Raised characters are 1/32 inch (.08 mm) styrene or 1/32 inch (.08 mm) thick. Sign Products molded plastic letters painted with Matthews polyurethane acrylic paints depending on color. Characters adhered to faceplate with IPS Weld-On #4.
 8. Single Units: Processed photopolymer, .035 inch (.08 mm) thick on .024 inch (.04 mm) thick aluminum backer, hand routed to size. Surface is primed with PPG epoxy primer and painted with Matthews polyurethane acrylic paint. Raised areas of the painted photopolymer are screened with NazDar System 2 screen print ink. Finished single unit face is attached to 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick black styrene backplate of the same shape with 3M Isotec adhesive.

9. Exterior Grade Single Unit: Etched 1/8 inch magnesium, hand routed to size. Surface is primed with PPG epoxy primer and painted with Matthews polyurethane acrylic paint. Raised areas of the painted photopolymer are screened with NazDar System 2 screen print ink.
- D. Standard Mounting Systems:
1. Partition Clips u-shaped 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick clear acrylic cut and shaped to customers' specifications.
 2. Magnetic Tape 1/2 inch (12.5 mm) or 3/4 inch (102 mm) thick black magnetic tape with adhesive backing cut to size.
 3. Double Sided Foam Tape 1 inch (25 mm) wide black or white 3M double-sided foam tape.
 4. Angle Stands 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick gloss black acrylic bent to a 65-degree angle. Base has four 3/8 inch (10 mm) diameter felt pads on the bottom.
 5. Vandal Resistant Tape 3M white VHB double sided foam tape
 6. Backplate Screws Routed 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick black styrene backplate with a counter sunk screw holes. Supplied with dry wall screws and anchors
 7. Backplate Glass CNC routed 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick gloss black acrylic with 3M, 1 inch (25 mm) wide black double sided foam tape.
 8. Stanchions: Telescoping sign holder with a 15 pound (6.8 kg) weighted base.

PART 3 EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Do not begin installation until surfaces to receive signs have been finished and finishes are dry and correctly cured.
- B. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

3.2 PREPARATION

- A. Clean surfaces thoroughly prior to installation.
- B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

3.3 INSTALLATION

- A. Install in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.
- B. Locate signs in accordance with approved shop drawings and ADA requirements.

3.4 PROTECTION

- A. Protect installed products until completion of project.
- B. Touch-up, repair or replace damaged products before Substantial Completion.

3.5 SCHEDULE

END OF DOCUMENT

DIVISION **15**

MECHANICAL

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 OLD Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 15053

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Piping materials and installation instructions common to most piping systems.
 - 2. Transition fittings.
 - 3. Dielectric fittings.
 - 4. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 5. Sleeves.
 - 6. Escutcheons.
 - 7. Grout.
 - 8. HVAC demolition.
 - 9. Equipment installation requirements common to equipment sections.
 - 10. Painting and finishing.
 - 11. Concrete bases.
 - 12. Supports and anchorages.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. Finished Spaces: Spaces other than mechanical and electrical equipment rooms, furred spaces, pipe and duct chases, unheated spaces immediately below roof, spaces above ceilings, unexcavated spaces, crawlspaces, and tunnels.
- B. Exposed, Interior Installations: Exposed to view indoors. Examples include finished occupied spaces and mechanical equipment rooms.
- C. Exposed, Exterior Installations: Exposed to view outdoors or subject to outdoor ambient temperatures and weather conditions. Examples include rooftop locations.
- D. Concealed, Interior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants. Examples include above ceilings and chases.

- E. Concealed, Exterior Installations: Concealed from view and protected from weather conditions and physical contact by building occupants but subject to outdoor ambient temperatures. Examples include installations within unheated shelters.
- F. The following are industry abbreviations for plastic materials:
 - 1. CPVC: Chlorinated polyvinyl chloride plastic.
 - 2. PE: Polyethylene plastic.
 - 3. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride plastic.
- G. The following are industry abbreviations for rubber materials:
 - 1. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
 - 2. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Transition fittings.
 - 2. Dielectric fittings.
 - 3. Mechanical sleeve seals.
 - 4. Escutcheons.
- B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Steel Support Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to AWS D1.1, "Structural Welding Code--Steel."
- B. Steel Pipe Welding: Qualify processes and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."
 - 1. Comply with provisions in ASME B31 Series, "Code for Pressure Piping."
 - 2. Certify that each welder has passed AWS qualification tests for welding processes involved and that certification is current.
- C. Electrical Characteristics for HVAC Equipment: Equipment of higher electrical characteristics may be furnished provided such proposed equipment is approved in writing and connecting electrical services, circuit breakers, and conduit sizes are appropriately modified. If minimum energy ratings or efficiencies are specified, equipment shall comply with requirements.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Deliver pipes and tubes with factory-applied end caps. Maintain end caps through shipping, storage, and handling to prevent pipe end damage and to prevent entrance of dirt, debris, and moisture.
- B. Store plastic pipes protected from direct sunlight. Support to prevent sagging and bending.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Arrange for pipe spaces, chases, slots, and openings in building structure during progress of construction, to allow for HVAC installations.
- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in poured-in-place concrete and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate requirements for access panels and doors for HVAC items requiring access that are concealed behind finished surfaces. Access panels and doors are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where subparagraph titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply for product selection:
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the manufacturers specified.
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the manufacturers specified.

2.2 PIPE, TUBE, AND FITTINGS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for pipe, tube, and fitting materials and joining methods.
- B. Pipe Threads: ASME B1.20.1 for factory-threaded pipe and pipe fittings.

2.3 JOINING MATERIALS

- A. Refer to individual Division 23 piping Sections for special joining materials not listed below.
- B. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: Suitable for chemical and thermal conditions of piping system contents.
 - 1. ASME B16.21, nonmetallic, flat, asbestos-free, 1/8-inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
 - a. Full-Face Type: For flat-face, Class 125, cast-iron and cast-bronze flanges.
 - b. Narrow-Face Type: For raised-face, Class 250, cast-iron and steel flanges.
 - 2. AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, unless otherwise indicated; and full-face or ring type, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Plastic, Pipe-Flange Gasket, Bolts, and Nuts: Type and material recommended by piping system manufacturer, unless otherwise indicated.
- E. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.
- F. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general-duty brazing, unless otherwise indicated; and AWS A5.8, BAg1, silver alloy for refrigerant piping, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.
- H. Solvent Cements for Joining Plastic Piping:
 - 1. CPVC Piping: ASTM F 493.
 - 2. PVC Piping: ASTM D 2564. Include primer according to ASTM F 656.
- I. Fiberglass Pipe Adhesive: As furnished or recommended by pipe manufacturer.

2.4 TRANSITION FITTINGS

- A. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Fittings: CPVC and PVC one-piece fitting with manufacturer's Schedule 80 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:

- a. Eslon Thermoplastics.
- B. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Adaptors: One-piece fitting with manufacturer's SDR 11 equivalent dimensions; one end with threaded brass insert, and one solvent-cement-joint end.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Thompson Plastics, Inc.
- C. Plastic-to-Metal Transition Unions: MSS SP-107, CPVC and PVC four-part union. Include brass end, solvent-cement-joint end, rubber O-ring, and union nut.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. NIBCO INC.
 - b. NIBCO, Inc.; Chemtrol Div.

2.5 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

- A. Description: Combination fitting of copper alloy and ferrous materials with threaded, solder-joint, plain, or weld-neck end connections that match piping system materials.
- B. Insulating Material: Suitable for system fluid, pressure, and temperature.
- C. Dielectric Unions: Factory-fabricated, union assembly, for 250-psig minimum working pressure at 180 deg F.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Eclipse, Inc.
 - d. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - e. Hart Industries, International, Inc.
 - f. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.
 - g. Zurn Industries, Inc.; Wilkins Div.
- D. Dielectric Flanges: Factory-fabricated, companion-flange assembly, for 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure as required to suit system pressures.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Capitol Manufacturing Co.
 - b. Central Plastics Company.
 - c. Epco Sales, Inc.
 - d. Watts Industries, Inc.; Water Products Div.

- E. Dielectric-Flange Kits: Companion-flange assembly for field assembly. Include flanges, full-face- or ring-type neoprene or phenolic gasket, phenolic or polyethylene bolt sleeves, phenolic washers, and steel backing washers.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Central Plastics Company.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
 - 2. Separate companion flanges and steel bolts and nuts shall have 150- or 300-psig minimum working pressure where required to suit system pressures.

- F. Dielectric Couplings: Galvanized-steel coupling with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; threaded ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225deg. F.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Calpico, Inc.
 - b. Lochinvar Corp.

- G. Dielectric Nipples: Electroplated steel nipple with inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic lining; plain, threaded, or grooved ends; and 300-psig minimum working pressure at 225 deg F.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Perfection Corp.
 - b. Precision Plumbing Products, Inc.
 - c. Sioux Chief Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - d. Victaulic Co. of America.

2.6 MECHANICAL SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing element unit, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between pipe and sleeve.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Plastic. Include two for each sealing element.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.7 SLEEVES

- A. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.
- B. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized, plain ends.
- C. Cast Iron: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe" equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. Stack Sleeve Fittings: Manufactured, cast-iron sleeve with integral clamping flange. Include clamping ring and bolts and nuts for membrane flashing.
 1. Underdeck Clamp: Clamping ring with set screws.
- E. Molded PVC: Permanent, with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.
- F. PVC Pipe: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40.
- G. Molded PE: Reusable, PE, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth-outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

2.8 ESCUTCHEONS

- A. Description: Manufactured wall and ceiling escutcheons and floor plates, with an ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and an OD that completely covers opening.
- B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with polished chrome-plated finish.
- C. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.
- D. Split-Casting, Cast-Brass Type: With concealed hinge and set screw.
 1. Finish: Polished chrome-plated.

- E. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With set screw or spring clips and chrome-plated finish.
- F. One-Piece, Floor-Plate Type: Cast-iron floor plate.
- G. Split-Casting, Floor-Plate Type: Cast brass with concealed hinge and set screw.

2.9 GROUT

- A. Description: ASTM C 1107, Grade B, nonshrink and nonmetallic, dry hydraulic-cement grout.
 - 1. Characteristics: Post-hardening, volume-adjusting, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous, and recommended for interior and exterior applications.
 - 2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.
 - 3. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HVAC DEMOLITION

- A. Refer to Division 01 Section "Cutting and Patching" and Division 02 Section "Selective Structure Demolition" for general demolition requirements and procedures.
- B. Disconnect, demolish, and remove HVAC systems, equipment, and components indicated to be removed.
 - 1. Piping to Be Removed: Remove portion of piping indicated to be removed and cap or plug remaining piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 2. Piping to Be Abandoned in Place: Drain piping and cap or plug piping with same or compatible piping material.
 - 3. Ducts to Be Removed: Remove portion of ducts indicated to be removed and plug remaining ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - 4. Ducts to Be Abandoned in Place: Cap or plug ducts with same or compatible ductwork material.
 - 5. Equipment to Be Removed: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment.
 - 6. Equipment to Be Removed and Reinstalled: Disconnect and cap services and remove, clean, and store equipment; when appropriate, reinstall, reconnect, and make equipment operational.
 - 7. Equipment to Be Removed and Salvaged: Disconnect and cap services and remove equipment and deliver to Owner.
- C. If pipe, insulation, or equipment to remain is damaged in appearance or is unserviceable, remove damaged or unserviceable portions and replace with new products of equal capacity and quality.

3.2 PIPING SYSTEMS - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

- A. Install piping according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.
- C. Install piping in concealed locations, unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.
- D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.
- E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.
- F. Install piping to permit valve servicing.
- G. Install piping at indicated slopes.
- H. Install piping free of sags and bends.
- I. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.
- J. Install piping to allow application of insulation.
- K. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.
- L. Install escutcheons for penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors according to the following:
 - 1. New Piping:
 - a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
 - b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type with spring clips.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece or split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.

- g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type and set screw.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass type.
 - k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - l. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Use the following:
- a. Chrome-Plated Piping: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - b. Insulated Piping: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - c. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and spring clips.
 - e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with chrome-plated finish.
 - f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge and set screw.
 - g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-casting, cast-brass type with polished chrome-plated finish.
 - h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed or exposed-rivet hinge and set screw or spring clips.
 - i. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, cast-brass type.
 - j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: Split-plate, stamped-steel type with set screw or spring clips.
 - k. Bare Piping at Floor Penetrations in Equipment Rooms: Split-casting, floor-plate type.
- M. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes.
- N. Permanent sleeves are not required for holes formed by removable PE sleeves.
- O. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- P. Install sleeves for pipes passing through concrete and masonry walls, gypsum-board partitions, and concrete floor and roof slabs.
- 1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.

- a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas **2 inches** above finished floor level. Extend cast-iron sleeve fittings below floor slab as required to secure clamping ring if ring is specified.
 2. Install sleeves in new walls and slabs as new walls and slabs are constructed.
 3. Install sleeves that are large enough to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation. Use the following sleeve materials:
 - a. Steel Pipe Sleeves: For pipes smaller than **NPS 6**.
 - b. Steel Sheet Sleeves: For pipes **NPS 6** and larger, penetrating gypsum-board partitions.
 - c. Stack Sleeve Fittings: For pipes penetrating floors with membrane waterproofing. Secure flashing between clamping flanges. Install section of cast-iron soil pipe to extend sleeve to **2 inches** above finished floor level. Refer to Division 07 Section "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for flashing.
 - 1) Seal space outside of sleeve fittings with grout.
 4. Except for underground wall penetrations, seal annular space between sleeve and pipe or pipe insulation, using joint sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Refer to Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for materials and installation.
- Q. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
1. Install steel pipe for sleeves smaller than **6 inches** in diameter.
 2. Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves **6 inches** and larger in diameter.
 3. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.
- R. Underground, Exterior-Wall Pipe Penetrations: Install cast-iron "wall pipes" for sleeves. Seal pipe penetrations using mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.mm)
1. Mechanical Sleeve Seal Installation: Select type and number of sealing elements required for pipe material and size. Position pipe in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pipe and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

- S. Fire-Barrier Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at pipe penetrations. Seal pipe penetrations with firestop materials. Refer to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping" for materials.
- T. Verify final equipment locations for roughing-in.
- U. Refer to equipment specifications in other Sections of these Specifications for roughing-in requirements.

3.3 PIPING JOINT CONSTRUCTION

- A. Join pipe and fittings according to the following requirements and Division 23 Sections specifying piping systems.
- B. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.
- C. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.
- D. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux, unless otherwise indicated, to tube end. Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," using lead-free solder alloy complying with ASTM B 32.
- E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," "Pipe and Tube" Chapter, using copper-phosphorus brazing filler metal complying with AWS A5.8.
- F. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
 - 1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
 - 2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.
- G. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to Part 1 "Quality Assurance" Article.
- H. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.
- I. Plastic Piping Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:

1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. CPVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2846/D 2846M Appendix.
3. PVC Pressure Piping: Join schedule number ASTM D 1785, PVC pipe and PVC socket fittings according to ASTM D 2672. Join other-than-schedule-number PVC pipe and socket fittings according to ASTM D 2855.
4. PVC Nonpressure Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855.

J. Plastic Pressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3139.

K. Plastic Nonpressure Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to ASTM D 3212.

L. PE Piping Heat-Fusion Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces by wiping with clean cloth or paper towels. Join according to ASTM D 2657.

1. Plain-End Pipe and Fittings: Use butt fusion.
2. Plain-End Pipe and Socket Fittings: Use socket fusion.

M. Fiberglass Bonded Joints: Prepare pipe ends and fittings, apply adhesive, and join according to pipe manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections according to the following, unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping **NPS 2** and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping **NPS 2-1/2** and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
3. Dry Piping Systems: Install dielectric unions and flanges to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.
4. Wet Piping Systems: Install dielectric coupling and nipple fittings to connect piping materials of dissimilar metals.

3.5 EQUIPMENT INSTALLATION - COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Install equipment to allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights are not indicated.

B. Install equipment level and plumb, parallel and perpendicular to other building systems and components in exposed interior spaces, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install HVAC equipment to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components. Connect equipment for ease of disconnecting, with minimum interference to other installations. Extend grease fittings to accessible locations.

D. Install equipment to allow right of way for piping installed at required slope.

3.6 PAINTING

- A. Painting of HVAC systems, equipment, and components is specified in Division 09 Sections "Interior Painting" and "Exterior Painting."
- B. Damage and Touchup: Repair marred and damaged factory-painted finishes with materials and procedures to match original factory finish.

3.7 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Concrete Bases: Anchor equipment to concrete base according to equipment manufacturer's written instructions and according to seismic codes at Project.
 - 1. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated, but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit.
 - 2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch centers around the full perimeter of the base.
 - 3. Install epoxy-coated anchor bolts for supported equipment that extend through concrete base, and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 - 4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 - 5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 - 6. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.
 - 7. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete and reinforcement as specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.8 ERECTION OF METAL SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Refer to Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for structural steel.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1.

3.9 ERECTION OF WOOD SUPPORTS AND ANCHORAGES

- A. Cut, fit, and place wood grounds, nailers, blocking, and anchorages to support, and anchor HVAC materials and equipment.
- B. Select fastener sizes that will not penetrate members if opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Tighten connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood members.

- C. Attach to substrates as required to support applied loads.

3.10 GROUTING

- A. Mix and install grout for HVAC equipment base bearing surfaces, pump and other equipment base plates, and anchors.
- B. Clean surfaces that will come into contact with grout.
- C. Provide forms as required for placement of grout.
- D. Avoid air entrapment during placement of grout.
- E. Place grout, completely filling equipment bases.
- F. Place grout on concrete bases and provide smooth bearing surface for equipment.
- G. Place grout around anchors.
- H. Cure placed grout.

END OF DOCUMENT

P-SERIES

PLA-A24BA6 & PUZ-A24NHA6 (-BS) 24,000 BTU/H CEILING CASSETTE HEAT-PUMP SYSTEM



Job Name: _____
 System Reference: _____ Date: _____



Indoor Unit: PLA-A24BA6



Outdoor Unit: PUZ-A24NHA6 (-BS)

UNIT OPTION:

- Standard Model.....PUZ-A24NHA6
- Seacoast (BS) Model.....PUZ-A24NHA6-BS

ACCESSORIES:

Indoor Unit

- Condensate Pump (BlueDiamond X87-711/721; 115/230V)
- Condensate Pump (Sauermann SI30-115/230; 115/230V)
- iSee Corner Panel (PAC-SA1ME-E)
- Multifunction Casement / MERV 10 Filter (PAC-SH53TM-E / PAC-SH59KF)
- Air Outlet Plates (PAC-SH51SP-E)

Outdoor Unit

- Wind Baffle (WB-PA2)*
*Allows operation to 0° F (-18° C).
- Air Outlet Guide (PAC-SG59SG-E)
- Mounting Base (QSMS1201)
- Wall Bracket (QSWB2000M-1)

Controls

- Wireless Controller (MHK1)
- Advanced Wired Controller (PAR-31MAA)
- Simple Wired Controller (PAC-YT53CRAU)
- M-NET Adapter (PAC-SF83MA-E)
- Temperature Sensor (PAC-SE41TS)

SPECIFICATIONS:

Rated Conditions (Capacity / Input)*		
Cooling	Btu/h / W	24,000 / 2,500
Heating at 47° F	Btu/h / W	26,000 / 2,570
Heating at 17° F	Btu/h / W	16,000 / 2,200

* Rating Conditions per AHRI Standard:
 Cooling | Indoor: 80° F (27° C)DB / 67° F (19° C)WB; Outdoor: 95° F (35° C)DB / 75° F (24° C)WB
 Heating at 47° F | Indoor: 70° F (21° C)DB / 60° F (16° C)WB; Outdoor: 47° F (8° C)DB / 43° F (6° C)WB
 Heating at 17° F | Indoor: 70° F (21° C)DB / 60° F (16° C)WB; Outdoor: 17° F (-8° C)DB / 15° F (-9° C)WB

Capacity Range		
Cooling	Btu/h	12,000 - 24,000
Heating at 47° F	Btu/h	12,000 - 28,000

Operating Range	
Cooling	0° F** to 115° F (-18° C to 46° C) DB
Heating	12° F to 70° F (-11° C to 21° C) DB

** The minimum temperature will be 23° F (-5° C) DB if optional wind baffle accessory is not installed.

AHRI Efficiency Ratings	
EER	9.6
SEER	14.0
HSPF	8.5
COP at 47° F	2.96
COP at 17° F	2.14

Electrical Power Requirements	208 / 230V, 1-Phase, 60 Hz
-------------------------------	----------------------------

Minimum Circuit Ampacity (MCA)		
Indoor / Outdoor	A	1 / 18

Indoor Unit		
Fan Motor (ECM)	FLA	0.51
Fan Motor Output	W	50
SHF / Moisture Removal		0.76 / 5.1 pt./h
Drain Lift Mechanism (Included)	H: In.	33-7/16

Outdoor Unit		
Compressor		DC INVERTER-driven Twin Rotary
Fan Motor (ECM)	FLA	0.75
MOCP	A	30

Airflow Rate (Low-M1-M2-Hi)			
Indoor (Cooling)	DRY	CFM	420-490-570-640
	WET		390-460-530-600
Outdoor	DRY		1,940

Sound Pressure Level			
Indoor (Low-M1-M2-Hi)			28-29-31-32
Outdoor	Cooling	dB(A)	48
	Heating		50

External Dimensions		
Indoor (H x W x D)	In.(mm)	10-3/16 x 33-1/16 x 33-1/16 (258 x 840 x 840)
Outdoor (H x W x D)		37-1/8 x 37-3/8 x 13 + 1-3/16 (943 x 950 x 330 + 30)

Net Weight		
Indoor (Unit / Grille)	Lbs.(kg)	51 / 13 (23 / 6)
Outdoor		165 (75)

External Finish	
Indoor	Munsell No. 6.4Y 8.9/0.4
Outdoor	Munsell No. 3Y 7.8 / 1.1

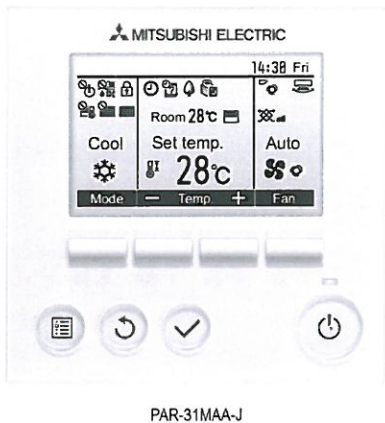
Refrigerant	R410A ; 6lbs., 10oz.
-------------	----------------------

Refrigerant Piping (Flared)		
Liquid (High Pressure)	In.(mm)	3/8 (9.52)
Gas (Low Pressure)		5/8 (15.88)
Maximum Total Refrigerant Pipe Length	Ft. (m)	165 (50)
Maximum Vertical Separation	Ft. (m)	100 (30)

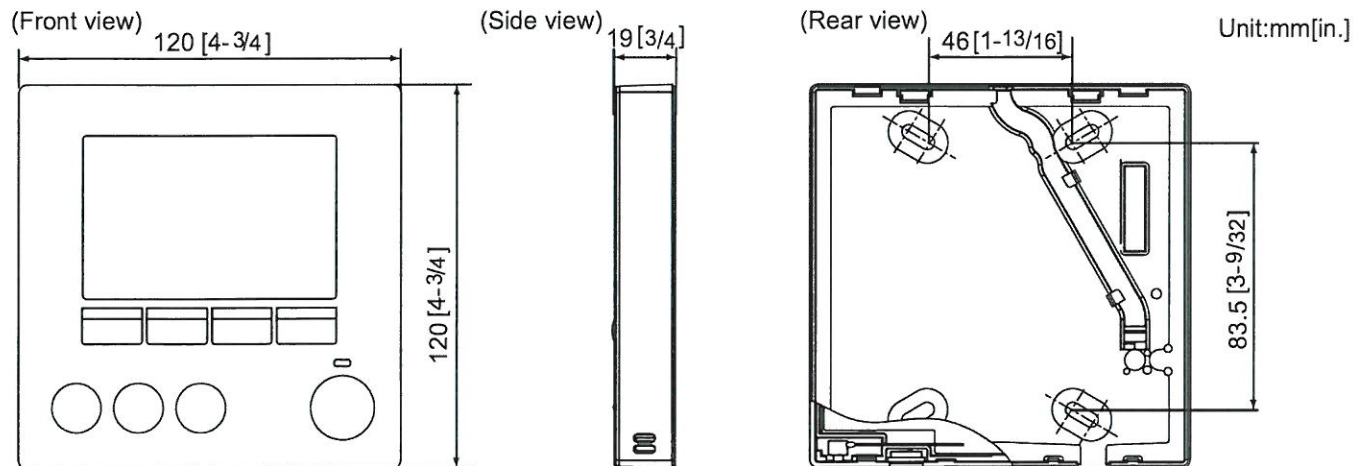
Job Name:

System Reference:

Date:

**SPECIFICATIONS:**

- Controls group operation for up to 16 indoor units in a single group
- Features selectable multi-lingual LCD (English, Spanish, and French)
- Supports both Fahrenheit and Celsius
- User functions allow user to set
 - On/Off
 - Operation modes cool, heat, dry, fan
 - Set temperature
 - Fan speed setting
 - Airflow direction
- Timer Operation:
 - Weekly Timer: On/Off/Temperature setting up to 8 times per day of the week in 1-minute increments
 - Simple Timer: On and Off time can be set once within 72-hour period in 1-hour increments
 - Auto-off Timer: Turns indoor unit Off based on countdown time up to 4-hours in 30-minute increments
- Room Temperature: Displays room temperature sensed either at the indoor unit (default) or at the remote controller
- Set Temperature Range Limit: From the Backlit MA Controller, the allowable set temperature range can be reduced for cool and heat modes
- Supplemental heat function enable/disable
- Function Lock Out: Prohibits all functions or all functions except On/Off from the backlit MA controller
- Addressing: No addressing required
- Wiring: connects using two-wire, stranded, non-polar control wire to indoor unit connection terminal
- Dimensions: 4-3/4 x 3/4 x 4-3/4" (120 x 19 x 120 mm)

DIMENSIONS:

COOLING & HEATING

 1340 Satellite Boulevard, Suwanee, GA 30024
 Toll Free: 800-433-4822 www.mehvac.com

DIVISION **16**
ELECTRICAL

DAMMON ENGINEERING, INC.
554 Old Spanish Trail
SLIDELL, LOUISIANA 70458
Phone: 985-649-5832
Dammonengineering.com

SECTION 16051

COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
 - 2. Sleeves for raceways and cables.
 - 3. Sleeve seals.
 - 4. Grout.
 - 5. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For sleeve seals.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:
 - 1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
 - 2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
 - 3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
 - 4. So connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

- B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.
- C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 8 Section "Access Doors and Frames."
- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES FOR RACEWAYS AND CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.
- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel.
 - 1. Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches and no side more than 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.052 inch.
 - b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter equal to, or more than, 50 inches and 1 or more sides equal to, or more than, 16 inches, thickness shall be 0.138 inch.

2.2 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.
 - 1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, **available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:**
 - 2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **product indicated on Drawings** or comparable product by one of the following:
 - a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - b. Calpico, Inc.
 - c. Metraflex Co.
 - d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

3. Sealing Elements: **EPDM** or **NBR** interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.
4. Pressure Plates: **Plastic, Carbon steel, or Stainless steel**. Include two for each sealing element.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: **Carbon steel with corrosion-resistant coating or Stainless steel** of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements. Include one for each sealing element.

2.3 GROUT

- A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive, nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1.
- B. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.
- C. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.
- D. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.
- E. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

3.2 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Electrical penetrations occur when raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, or busways penetrate concrete slabs, concrete or masonry walls, or fire-rated floor and wall assemblies.
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.

- D. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- E. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls.
- F. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches** above finished floor level.
- G. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable, unless indicated otherwise.
- H. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry
 - 1. Promptly pack grout solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect grout while curing.
- I. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- J. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at raceway and cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal raceway and cable penetration sleeves with firestop materials. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- K. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- L. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using **steel** pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.
- M. Underground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal exterior wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16060

GROUNDING AND BONDING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:
 - 1. Test wells.
 - 2. Ground rods.
 - 3. Ground rings.
 - 4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.
 - 5. Grounding for sensitive electronic equipment.
- C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
 - 1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

- A. Insulated Conductors: **Copper** wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Bare Copper Conductors:
 - 1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
 - 2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
 - 3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
 - 4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
 - 5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
 - 6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
 - 7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
- C. Bare Grounding Conductor and Conductor Protector for Wood Poles:
 - 1. No. 4 AWG minimum, soft-drawn copper.
 - 2. Conductor Protector: Half-round PVC or wood molding. If wood, use pressure-treated fir or cypress or cedar.
- D. Grounding Bus: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, **1/4 by 2 inches** in cross section, unless otherwise indicated; with insulators.

2.2 CONNECTORS

- A. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.
- B. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.
 - 1. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

- C. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.3 GROUNDING ELECTRODES

- A. Ground Rods: **Copper-clad steel, 3/4 inch by 10 feet** in diameter.
 - 1. Termination: Factory-attached No. 4/0 AWG bare conductor at least 48 inches long.
 - 2. Backfill Material: Electrode manufacturer's recommended material.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

- A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller, and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger, unless otherwise indicated.
- B. Grounding Bus: Install in electrical and telephone equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.
 - 1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch, minimum, from wall 6 inches above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 2. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, down to specified height above floor, and connect to horizontal bus.
- C. Conductor Terminations and Connections:
 - 1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
 - 2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
 - 3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
 - 4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING OVERHEAD LINES

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Install 2 parallel ground rods if resistance to ground by a single, ground-rod electrode exceeds 25 ohms.
- C. Drive ground rods until tops are 12 inches below finished grade in undisturbed earth.
- D. Ground-Rod Connections: Install bolted connectors for underground connections and connections to rods.

- E. Lightning Arrester Grounding Conductors: Separate from other grounding conductors.
- F. Secondary Neutral and Transformer Enclosure: Interconnect and connect to grounding conductor.
- G. Protect grounding conductors running on surface of wood poles with molding extended from grade level up to and through communication service and transformer spaces.

3.3 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.
- B. Pad-Mounted Transformers and Switches: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and noncurrent-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches from the foundation.

3.4 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

- A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.
- B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:
 - 1. Feeders and branch circuits.
 - 2. Lighting circuits.
 - 3. Receptacle circuits.
 - 4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
 - 6. Flexible raceway runs.
 - 7. Armored and metal-clad cable runs.
 - 8. Busway Supply Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor from grounding bus in the switchgear, switchboard, or distribution panel to equipment grounding bar terminal on busway.
 - 9. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.
 - 10. X-Ray Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in circuits supplying x-ray equipment.
- C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

- D. Water Heater, Heat-Tracing, and Antifrost Heating Cables: Install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor to each electric water heater and heat-tracing cable. Bond conductor to heater units, piping, connected equipment, and components.
- E. Isolated Grounding Receptacle Circuits: Install an insulated equipment grounding conductor connected to the receptacle grounding terminal. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- F. Isolated Equipment Enclosure Circuits: For designated equipment supplied by a branch circuit or feeder, isolate equipment enclosure from supply circuit raceway with a nonmetallic raceway fitting listed for the purpose. Install fitting where raceway enters enclosure, and install a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor. Isolate conductor from raceway and from panelboard grounding terminals. Terminate at equipment grounding conductor terminal of the applicable derived system or service, unless otherwise indicated.
- G. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.
 - 1. Service and Central Equipment Locations and Wiring Closets: Terminate grounding conductor on a 1/4-by-2-by-12-inch grounding bus.
 - 2. Terminal Cabinets: Terminate grounding conductor on cabinet grounding terminal.
- H. **Metal** Poles Supporting Outdoor Lighting Fixtures: Install grounding electrode and a separate insulated equipment grounding conductor in addition to grounding conductor installed with branch-circuit conductors.

3.5 INSTALLATION

- A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.
- B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor, and install in conduit.
- C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 2 inches below finished floor or final grade, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.
 2. For grounding electrode system, install at least **three** rods spaced at least one-rod length from each other and located at least the same distance from other grounding electrodes, and connect to the service grounding electrode conductor.
- D. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
 2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
 3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.
- E. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:
1. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange. Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.
 2. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
 3. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.
- F. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.
- G. Grounding for Steel Building Structure: Install a driven ground rod at base of each corner column and at intermediate exterior columns at distances not more than 60 feet apart.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.
- B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

- C. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
 2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal **and at individual ground rods**. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.
 - a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
 - b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.
 3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location, and include observations of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.
- D. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:
1. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 kVA and Less: **10** ohms.
 2. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity 500 to 1000 kVA: **5** ohms.
 3. Power and Lighting Equipment or System with Capacity More Than 1000 kVA: **3** ohms.
 4. Power Distribution Units or Panelboards Serving Electronic Equipment: **3** ohm(s).
 5. Substations and Pad-Mounted Equipment: **5** ohms.
- E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values, notify Architect promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16073

HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
 - 2. Construction requirements for concrete bases.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Not used.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.
- B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.
- C. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

- A. Delegated Design: Design supports for multiple raceways, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.
- B. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.
- C. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.
- D. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of **five** times the applied force.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For the following:
 - 1. Steel slotted support systems.
 - 2. Nonmetallic slotted support systems.
- B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following:
 - 1. Trapeze hangers. Include Product Data for components.
 - 2. Steel slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 3. Nonmetallic slotted channel systems. Include Product Data for components.
 - 4. Equipment supports.
- C. Welding certificates.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.
- B. Coordinate installation of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations. These items are specified in Division 7 Section "Roof Accessories."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

- A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
 - 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.

- b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. ERICO International Corporation.
 - d. GS Metals Corp.
 - e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
 - f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.
 - g. Wesanco, Inc.
 3. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
 4. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 5. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
 6. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.
- B. Nonmetallic Slotted Support Systems: Structural-grade, factory-formed, glass-fiber-resin channels and angles with 9/16-inch diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches o.c., in at least 1 surface.
 1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
 - b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - c. Fabco Plastics Wholesale Limited.
 - d. Seasafe, Inc.
 3. Fittings and Accessories: Products of channel and angle manufacturer and designed for use with those items.
 4. Fitting and Accessory Materials: Same as channels and angles.
 5. Rated Strength: Selected to suit applicable load criteria.
- C. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.
- D. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: **Steel or Steel and malleable-iron** hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.
- E. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.
- F. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

G. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete, steel, or wood, with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Hilti Inc.
 - 2) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 3) MKT Fastening, LLC.
 - 4) Simpson Strong-Tie Co., Inc.; Masterset Fastening Systems Unit.
2. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, **zinc-coated** steel, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.
 - a. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 - b. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
 - 2) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
 - 3) Hilti Inc.
 - 4) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
 - 5) MKT Fastening, LLC.
3. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
4. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
5. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
6. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
7. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

- A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

- B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.
- B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, IMC, and RMC as **required by** NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch in diameter.
- C. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted **or other** support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least **25** percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.
 - 1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with **two-bolt conduit clamps**.
- D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.
- B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, **EMT, IMC, and RMC** may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.
- C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.
- D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:
 - 1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
 - 2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
 - 3. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
 - 4. To Existing Concrete: Expansion anchor fasteners.

5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated driven threaded studs provided with lock washers and nuts may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches thick.
6. To Steel: **Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.**
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate **by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.**

- E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

- A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 5 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
- B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.
- C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

- A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.
- B. Use **3000-psi** minimum, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 3 Section "**Cast-in-Place Concrete.**"
- C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.
 1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
 3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

- A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
 - 1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.
- B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Division 9 **painting Sections** for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.
- C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16075

ELECTRICAL IDENTIFICATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
 - 2. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
 - 3. Underground-line warning tape.
 - 4. Warning labels and signs.
 - 5. Instruction signs.
 - 6. Equipment identification labels.
 - 7. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.
- B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.
- C. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.
- B. Comply with NFPA 70.
- C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

1.5 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.
- B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.
- C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.
- D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.
- B. Color for Printed Legend:
 - 1. Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
 - 2. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.
- C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.
- D. Snap-Around Labels: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, preprinted, color-coded acrylic sleeves, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- E. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, **2 inches** long, with diameter sized to suit diameter of raceway or cable it identifies and to stay in place by gripping action.
- F. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; **2 inches** wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.2 CONDUCTOR AND COMMUNICATION- AND CONTROL-CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

- A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than **3 mils** thick by **1 to 2 inches** wide.

- B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.
- C. Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels: Cut from 0.014-inch thick aluminum sheet, with stamped, embossed, or scribed legend, and fitted with tabs and matching slots for permanently securing around wire or cable jacket or around groups of conductors.
- D. Metal Tags: Brass or aluminum, 2 by 2 by 0.05 inch, with stamped legend, punched for use with self-locking nylon tie fastener.
- E. Write-On Tags: Polyester tag, 0.010 inch thick, with corrosion-resistant grommet and polyester or nylon tie for attachment to conductor or cable.
 - 1. Marker for Tags: Permanent, waterproof, black ink marker recommended by tag manufacturer.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

- A. Description: Permanent, bright-colored, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.
 - 1. Not less than 6 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
 - 2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
 - 3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
 - 4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

- A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.
- B. Self-Adhesive Warning Labels: Factory printed, multicolor, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for display on front cover, door, or other access to equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
- C. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.
- D. Metal-Backed, Butyrate Warning Signs: Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs with 0.0396-inch galvanized-steel backing; and with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 10 by 14 inches.
- E. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:
 - 1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."

2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR **36 INCHES.**"

2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

- A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum **1/16 inch** thick for signs up to **20 sq. in.** and **1/8 inch** thick for larger sizes.
 1. Engraved legend with **black letters on white face.**
 2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.
 3. Framed with mitered acrylic molding and arranged for attachment at applicable equipment.

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

- A. Adhesive Film Label: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch.**
- B. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch.** Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and ultraviolet-resistant seal for label.
- C. Self-Adhesive, Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Adhesive backed, with white letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch.**
- D. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be **3/8 inch.**
- E. Stenciled Legend: In nonfading, waterproof, **black** ink or paint. Minimum letter height shall be **1 inch.**

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

- A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.
 1. Minimum Width: **3/16 inch.**
 2. Tensile Strength: **50 lb,** minimum.
 3. Temperature Range: **Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.**
 4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.
- B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
 1. Exterior Concrete, Stucco, and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):

- a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior concrete and masonry primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
2. Exterior Concrete Unit Masonry:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a block filler.
 - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss acrylic enamel.
3. Exterior Ferrous Metal:
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior ferrous-metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
4. Exterior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Exterior zinc-coated metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Exterior semigloss alkyd enamel.
5. Interior Concrete and Masonry (Other Than Concrete Unit Masonry):
 - a. Semigloss Alkyd-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Interior concrete and masonry primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss alkyd enamel.
6. Interior Concrete Unit Masonry:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a block filler.
 - 1) Block Filler: Concrete unit masonry block filler.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
7. Interior Gypsum Board:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Interior gypsum board primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
8. Interior Ferrous Metal:
 - a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.

- 1) Primer: Interior ferrous-metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
9. Interior Zinc-Coated Metal (except Raceways):
- a. Semigloss Acrylic-Enamel Finish: **Two** finish coat(s) over a primer.
 - 1) Primer: Interior zinc-coated metal primer.
 - 2) Finish Coats: Interior semigloss acrylic enamel.
- C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

- A. Accessible Raceways and Metal-Clad Cables, 600 V or Less, for Service, Feeder, and Branch Circuits More Than **30 A**: Identify with orange **self-adhesive vinyl label or snap-around label**.
- B. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, **self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands or snap-around, color-coding bands**:
1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
 2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
 3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
 4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
 5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
 6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
 7. Control Wiring: Green and red.
- C. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For **primary and secondary** conductors No. **1/0 AWG** and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, manholes, and handholes use aluminum wraparound marker labels or **metal tags**. Identify source and circuit number of each set of conductors. For single conductor cables, identify phase in addition to the above.
- D. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use **color-coding conductor tape or aluminum wraparound marker labels or metal tags**. Identify each ungrounded conductor according to source and circuit number.
- E. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach **write-on tags or marker tape** to conductors and list source and circuit number.

- F. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.
1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
 2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
 3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.
- G. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. **Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.**
- H. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply **self-adhesive warning labels**. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.
1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:
 - a. Power transfer switches.
 - b. Controls with external control power connections.
 2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.
- I. Instruction Signs:
1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
 2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum **3/8-inch** high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for **emergency operations**.
- J. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and Operation and Maintenance Manual. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.
1. Labeling Instructions:

- a. Indoor Equipment: **Self-adhesive, engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.** Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with **1/2-inch** high letters on **1-1/2-inch** high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels **2 inches** high.
- b. Outdoor Equipment: **Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.**
- c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

- a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
- b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.
- c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
- d. Transformers.
- e. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
- f. Disconnect switches.
- g. Enclosed circuit breakers.
- h. Motor starters.
- i. Push-button stations.
- j. Contactors.
- k. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
- l. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
- m. Master clock and program equipment.
- n. Intercommunication and call system master and staff stations.
- o. Television/audio components, racks, and controls.
- p. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
- q. Monitoring and control equipment.
- r. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.
- B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.
- C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.
- D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.
- E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.
- F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls

- and floors, at **50-foot** maximum intervals in straight runs, and at **25-foot** maximum intervals in congested areas.
- G. **Color-Coding for Phase and Voltage Level Identification, 600 V and Less:** Use the colors listed below for ungrounded **service, feeder, and branch-circuit** conductors.
1. Color shall be **factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 10 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.**
 2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Black.
 - b. Phase B: Red.
 - c. Phase C: Blue.
 3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:
 - a. Phase A: Brown.
 - b. Phase B: Orange.
 - c. Phase C: Yellow.
 4. **Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape:** Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of **6 inches** from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.
- H. **Aluminum Wraparound Marker Labels and Metal Tags:** Secure tight to surface of conductor or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
- I. **Underground-Line Warning Tape:** During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at **6 to 8 inches** below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench exceeds **16 inches** overall.
- J. **Painted Identification:** Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 9 painting Sections.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16120

CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:
 - 1. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
 - 2. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.
 - 3. Sleeves and sleeve seals for cables.
- B. Related Sections include the following:
 - 1. Not used.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.
- B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.
- C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or is a nationally recognized testing

laboratory (NRTL) as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Person currently certified by the InterNational Electrical Testing Association or the National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies to supervise on-site testing specified in Part 3.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Alcan Products Corporation; Alcan Cable Division.
2. American Insulated Wire Corp.; a Leviton Company.
3. General Cable Corporation.
4. Senator Wire & Cable Company.
5. Southwire Company.

C. **Copper** Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.

D. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types **THHN-THWN**

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
 - 1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
 - 3. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
 - 4. 3M; Electrical Products Division.
 - 5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

- C. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

2.3 SLEEVES FOR CABLES

- A. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, galvanized steel, plain ends.

- B. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings: Galvanized sheet steel with minimum 0.052- or 0.138-inch thickness as indicated and of length to suit application.

- D. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

2.4 SLEEVE SEALS

- A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

- B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

- C. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide **the product indicated on Drawings** or a comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
 - 2. Calpico, Inc.
 - 3. Metraflex Co.
 - 4. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.

- D. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and cable.

1. Sealing Elements: **EPDM** interlocking links shaped to fit surface of cable or conduit. Include type and number required for material and size of raceway or cable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

- A. Feeders: **Copper**. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.
- B. Branch Circuits: Copper. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller; stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

- A. Service Entrance: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- B. Exposed Feeders: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- C. Feeders Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, Partitions, and Crawlspace: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- D. Feeders Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- E. Exposed Branch Circuits, Including in Crawlspace: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- F. Branch Circuits Concealed in Ceilings, Walls, and Partitions: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- G. Branch Circuits Concealed in Concrete, below Slabs-on-Grade, and Underground: **Type THHN-THWN, single conductors in raceway.**
- H. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, strain relief device at terminations to suit application.
- I. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.
- J. Class 2 Control Circuits: **Type THHN-THWN, in raceway.**

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

- A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

- B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.
- C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, that will not damage cables or raceway.
- D. Install exposed cables parallel and perpendicular to surfaces of exposed structural members, and follow surface contours where possible.
- E. Support cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints."
- F. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

- A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.
- B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.
- C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least **6 inches** of slack.

3.5 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

- A. Coordinate sleeve selection and application with selection and application of firestopping specified in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- B. Concrete Slabs and Walls: Install sleeves for penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of slabs and walls.
- C. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
- D. Rectangular Sleeve Minimum Metal Thickness:
 - 1. For sleeve rectangle perimeter less than **50 inches** and no side greater than **16 inches**, thickness shall be **0.052 inch**.
 - 2. For sleeve rectangle perimeter equal to, or greater than, **50 inches** and 1 or more sides equal to, or greater than, **16 inches**, thickness shall be **0.138 inch**.

- E. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Install sleeves for penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies unless openings compatible with firestop system used are fabricated during construction of floor or wall.
- F. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both wall surfaces.
- G. Extend sleeves installed in floors **2 inches** above finished floor level.
- H. Size pipe sleeves to provide **1/4-inch** annular clear space between sleeve and cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed **or unless seismic criteria require different clearance**.
- I. Seal space outside of sleeves with grout for penetrations of concrete and masonry.
- J. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors: Seal annular space between sleeve and cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint according to Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants."
- K. Fire-Rated-Assembly Penetrations: Maintain indicated fire rating of walls, partitions, ceilings, and floors at cable penetrations. Install sleeves and seal with firestop materials according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."
- L. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.
- M. Aboveground Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Size sleeves to allow for **1-inch** annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

3.6 SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION

- A. Install to seal underground exterior-wall penetrations.
- B. Use type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for cable material and size. Position cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.7 FIRESTOPPING

- A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test **service entrance and feeder conductors** for compliance with requirements.
2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
3. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each splice in cables and conductors No. 3 AWG and larger. Remove box and equipment covers so splices are accessible to portable scanner.
 - a. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each splice 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - b. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
 - c. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies splices checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16140

WIRING DEVICES

SECTION 16140 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.
2. Twist-locking receptacles.
3. Receptacles with integral surge suppression units.
4. Wall-box motion sensors.
5. Isolated-ground receptacles.
6. Hospital-grade receptacles.
7. Snap switches and wall-box dimmers.
8. Solid-state fan speed controls.
9. Wall-switch and exterior occupancy sensors.
10. Communications outlets.
11. Pendant cord-connector devices.
12. Cord and plug sets.
13. Floor service outlets, poke-through assemblies, service poles, and multioutlet assemblies.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Voice and Data Communication Cabling" for workstation outlets.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.
- B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.
- C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.
- D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

- E. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.
- F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
- B. Shop Drawings: List of legends and description of materials and process used for premarking wall plates.
- C. Samples: One for each type of device and wall plate specified, in each color specified.
- D. Field quality-control test reports.
- E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.
- B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.
 - 1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:
 - 1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).

2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

- A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
 - c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).
- B. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498 Supplement SD.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 8300 (duplex).
 - b. Hubbell; HBL8310 (single), HBL8300H (duplex).
 - c. Leviton; 8310 (single), 8300 (duplex).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 9301-HG (single), 9300-HG (duplex).
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; CR 5253IG.
 - b. Leviton; 5362-IG.
 - c. Pass & Seymour; IG6300.
 3. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Tamper-Resistant Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; TR8300.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL8300SG.
 - c. Leviton; 8300-SGG.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 63H.
3. Description: Labeled to comply with NFPA 70, "Health Care Facilities" Article, "Pediatric Locations" Section.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Straight blade, **feed**-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.
- B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; GF20.
 - b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
- C. Hospital-Grade, Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; HGF20.
 - b. Hubbell; HGF8300.
 - c. Leviton; 6898-HG.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 2091-SHG.

2.4 TVSS RECEPTACLES

- A. General Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 1449, with integral TVSS in line to ground, line to neutral, and neutral to ground.
 1. TVSS Components: Multiple metal-oxide varistors; with a nominal clamp-level rating of 400 volts and minimum single transient pulse energy dissipation of 240 J, according to IEEE C62.41.2 and IEEE C62.45.

2. Active TVSS Indication: Visual and audible, with light visible in face of device to indicate device is "active" or "no longer in service."
- B. Duplex TVSS Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 5362BLS.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL5362SA.
 - c. Leviton; 5380.
 3. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
- C. Isolated-Ground, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; IG5362BLS.
 - b. Hubbell; IG5362SA.
 - c. Leviton; 5380-IG.
 3. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.
- D. Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles: Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 8300BLS.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL8362SA.
 - c. Leviton; 8380.
 3. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R.
- E. Isolated-Ground, Hospital-Grade, Duplex Convenience Receptacles:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

- a. Cooper; IG8300HGBLS.
 - b. Hubbell; IG8362SA.
 - c. Leviton; 8380-IG.
3. Description: Straight blade, 125 V, 20 A; NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R. Comply with UL 498 Supplement SD. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.5 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

- A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; L520R.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL2310.
 - c. Leviton; 2310.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; L520-R.

- B. Isolated-Ground, Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Hubbell; IG2310.
 - b. Leviton; 2310-IG.
3. Description: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498. Equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.6 PENDANT CORD-CONNECTOR DEVICES

- A. Description: Matching, locking-type plug and receptacle body connector; NEMA WD 6 configurations L5-20P and L5-20R, heavy-duty grade.

1. Body: Nylon with screw-open cable-gripping jaws and provision for attaching external cable grip.

2. External Cable Grip: Woven wire-mesh type made of high-strength galvanized-steel wire strand, matched to cable diameter, and with attachment provision designed for corresponding connector.

2.7 CORD AND PLUG SETS

- A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.
 1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.
 2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.8 SNAP SWITCHES

- A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.
- B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
 - b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
 - c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).
- C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:
 1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
 - b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
 - c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.
 3. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

- D. Key-Operated Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 2221L.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL1221L.
 - c. Leviton; 1221-2L.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-L.
 3. Description: Single pole, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
- E. Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 1995.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL1557.
 - c. Leviton; 1257.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251.
- F. Key-Operated, Single-Pole, Double-Throw, Momentary Contact, Center-Off Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A; for use with mechanically held lighting contactors, with factory-supplied key in lieu of switch handle.
1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
 2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 1995L.
 - b. Hubbell; HBL1557L.
 - c. Leviton; 1257L.
 - d. Pass & Seymour; 1251L.

2.9 WALL-BOX DIMMERS

- A. Dimmer Switches: Modular, full-wave, solid-state units with integral, quiet on-off switches, with audible frequency and EMI/RFI suppression filters.
- B. Control: Continuously adjustable **slider**; with single-pole or three-way switching. Comply with UL 1472.
- C. Incandescent Lamp Dimmers: 120 V; control shall follow square-law dimming curve. On-off switch positions shall bypass dimmer module.

1. 600 W; dimmers shall require no derating when ganged with other devices.
Illuminated when "OFF."

- D. Fluorescent Lamp Dimmer Switches: Modular; compatible with dimmer ballasts; trim potentiometer to adjust low-end dimming; dimmer-ballast combination capable of consistent dimming with low end not greater than 20 percent of full brightness.

2.10 COMMUNICATIONS OUTLETS

A. Telephone Outlet:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 3560-6.
 - b. Leviton; 40649.
3. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for terminating 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e. Comply with UL 1863.

B. Combination TV and Telephone Outlet:

1. Available Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
2. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
 - a. Cooper; 3562.
 - b. Leviton; 40595.
3. Description: Single RJ-45 jack for 100-ohm, balanced, four-pair UTP; TIA/EIA-568-B.1; complying with Category 5e; and one Type F coaxial cable connector.

2.11 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Match type and color of wall plates in existing building.

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant with lockable cover.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.
- B. Coordination with Other Trades:
 - 1. Take steps to insure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
 - 2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
 - 3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
 - 4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.
- C. Conductors:
 - 1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
 - 2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
 - 3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
 - 4. Existing Conductors:
 - a. Cut back and pigtail, or replace all damaged conductors.
 - b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
 - c. Pigtailling existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.
- D. Device Installation:
 - 1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
 - 2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
 - 3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
 - 4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than **6 inches** in length.
 - 5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.

6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.
7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles **down**, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the **left**.
2. Install hospital-grade receptacles in patient-care areas with the ground pin or neutral blade at the top.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Install unshared neutral conductors on line and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multigang wall plates.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use stamped **black**-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

1. In healthcare facilities, prepare reports that comply with recommendations in NFPA 99.
2. Test Instruments: Use instruments that comply with UL 1436.
3. Test Instrument for Convenience Receptacles: Digital wiring analyzer with digital readout or illuminated LED indicators of measurement.

B. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
 2. Percent Voltage Drop under 15-A Load: A value of 6 percent or higher is not acceptable.
 3. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
 4. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.
 5. Using the test plug, verify that the device and its outlet box are securely mounted.
 6. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions, remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.
- C. Test straight blade **hospital-grade convenience outlets** for the retention force of the grounding blade according to NFPA 99. Retention force shall be not less than **4 oz.**

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16442

PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. Section Includes:
 - 1. Distribution panelboards.
 - 2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
 - 3. Load centers.
 - 4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. SVR: Suppressed voltage rating.
- B. TVSS: Transient voltage surge suppressor.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard, switching and overcurrent protective device, transient voltage suppression device, accessory, and component indicated. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.
- B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.
 - 1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
 - 2. Detail enclosure types and details for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - 3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
 - 4. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
 - 5. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
 - 6. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
 - 7. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

8. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graph paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
- C. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.
- D. Field Quality-Control Reports:
1. Test procedures used.
 2. Test results that comply with requirements.
 3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.
- E. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. Submit final versions after load balancing.
- F. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 1 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
 2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.
- 1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE
- A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Member company of NETA or an NRTL.
1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.
- B. Source Limitations: Obtain panelboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.
- C. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.
- D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
- E. Comply with NEMA PB 1.
- F. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

- A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.
- B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to NECA 407.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

- 1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
- 2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:
 - a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 23 deg F to plus 104 deg F.
 - b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

- 1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
- 2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet.

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

- 1. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without Owner's written permission.
- 2. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.8 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.
- B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 3.

1.9 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace transient voltage suppression devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
 - 1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
 - 1. Keys: Two spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
 - 2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and Ground Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Types: Two spares for each panelboard.
 - 3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
 - 4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PANELBOARDS

- A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- B. Enclosures: Flush and surface-mounted cabinets.
 - 1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.
 - a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
 - b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
 - c. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
 - d. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 5.
 - 2. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box.
 - 3. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover.
 - 4. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
 - 5. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
 - 6. Finishes:

- a. Panels and Trim: Steel, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
 - b. Back Boxes: Same finish as panels and trim.
 - c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.
7. Directory Card: Inside panelboard door, mounted in metal frame with transparent protective cover.
- C. Incoming Mains Location: Bottom.
- D. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
 3. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
 4. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and UL listed as suitable for nonlinear loads.
 5. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.
- E. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
1. Material: Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity.
 2. Main and Neutral Lugs: Mechanical type.
 3. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: Mechanical type.
 4. Feed-Through Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
 5. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 6. Gutter-Tap Lugs: Mechanical type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
 7. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.
- F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for panelboards or load centers with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
- G. Future Devices: Mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.
- H. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices, listed and labeled for series-connected short-circuit rating by an NRTL.

- I. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals.

2.2 DISTRIBUTION PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide or comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- C. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.
 1. For doors more than 36 inches high, provide two latches, keyed alike.
- D. Mains: Circuit breaker.
- E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: Plug-in circuit breakers.
- F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: Bolt-on circuit breakers; plug-in circuit breakers where individual positive-locking device requires mechanical release for removal.
- G. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.
- H. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.
 1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

2.3 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

- A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.

2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

C. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

F. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, electrically held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.

G. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

H. Column-Type Panelboards: Narrow gutter extension, with cover, to overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses.

2.4 LOAD CENTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

B. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.

C. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.

D. Mains: Circuit breaker.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Plug-in circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

F. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

2.5 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

- A. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:
- B. **Basis-of-Design Product:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide comparable product by one of the following:
 - 1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
 - 2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
 - 3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.
 - 4. Square D; a brand of Schneider Electric.
- C. **Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB):** Comply with UL 489, with interrupting capacity to meet available fault currents.
 - 1. **Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:** Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads, and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
 - 2. **Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers:** Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
 - 3. **Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:**
 - a. Instantaneous trip.
 - b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
 - c. Long- and short-time time adjustments.
 - d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I^2t response.
 - 4. **Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers:** Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
 - 5. **GFCI Circuit Breakers:** Single- and two-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
 - 6. **Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers:** Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
 - 7. **Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter (AFCI) Circuit Breakers:** Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
 - 8. **Molded-Case Circuit-Breaker (MCCB) Features and Accessories:**
 - a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
 - b. Lugs: Mechanical style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
 - c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.

- d. Ground-Fault Protection: Integrally mounted relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
- e. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit.
- f. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
- g. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
- h. Multipole units enclosed in a single housing or factory assembled to operate as a single unit.

2.6 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

- A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.
- B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

- A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to NECA 407.
- B. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged or rusted or have been subjected to water saturation.
- C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.
- D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

- A. Install panelboards and accessories according to NECA 407.
- B. Equipment Mounting: Install panelboards on concrete bases, **4-inch** nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Division 3 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
 - 1. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on **18-inch** centers around full perimeter of base.

2. For panelboards, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
 3. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
 4. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to panelboards.
 5. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
- C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.
- D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 16 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
- E. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.
- F. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.
1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
- G. Install filler plates in unused spaces.
- H. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four **1-inch (27-GRC)** empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.
- I. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties after completing load balancing.
- J. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

- A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads after balancing panelboard loads; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing. Use a computer or typewriter to create directory; handwritten directories are not acceptable.
- C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."
- D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in distribution panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Division 16 Section "Electrical Identification."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.
- B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.
- C. Perform tests and inspections.
 - 1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
- D. Acceptance Testing Preparation:
 - 1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
 - 2. Test continuity of each circuit.
- E. Tests and Inspections:
 - 1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
 - 2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
 - 3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:
 - a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
 - b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
 - c. Instruments and Equipment:
 - 1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
- F. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
- G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

- A. Adjust moving parts and operable component to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.
- B. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes.
 - 1. Measure as directed during period of normal system loading.
 - 2. Perform load-balancing circuit changes outside normal occupancy/working schedule of the facility and at time directed. Avoid disrupting critical 24-hour services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
 - 3. After circuit changes, recheck loads during normal load period. Record all load readings before and after changes and submit test records.
 - 4. Tolerance: Difference exceeding 20 percent between phase loads, within a panelboard, is not acceptable. Rebalance and recheck as necessary to meet this minimum requirement.

3.6 PROTECTION

- A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF DOCUMENT

SECTION 16511
INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

- A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

- A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior lighting fixtures, lamps, and ballasts.
2. Emergency lighting units.
3. Exit signs.
4. Lighting fixture supports.
5. Retrofit kits for fluorescent lighting fixtures.

- B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 16 Section "Wiring Devices" for manual wall-box dimmers for incandescent lamps.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

- A. BF: Ballast factor.
- B. CRI: Color-rendering index.
- C. CU: Coefficient of utilization.
- D. HID: High-intensity discharge.
- E. LER: Luminaire efficacy rating.
- F. Luminaire: Complete lighting fixture, including ballast housing if provided.
- G. RCR: Room cavity ratio.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

- A. Product Data: For each type of lighting fixture, arranged in order of fixture designation. Include data on features, accessories, finishes, and the following:

1. Physical description of lighting fixture including dimensions.
 2. Emergency lighting units including battery and charger.
 3. Ballast.
 4. Energy-efficiency data.
 5. Air and Thermal Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Furnish data required in "Submittals" Article in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 6. Sound Performance Data: For air-handling lighting fixtures. Indicate sound power level and sound transmission class in test reports certified according to standards specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
 7. Life, output, and energy-efficiency data for lamps.
 8. Photometric data, in IESNA format, based on laboratory tests of each lighting fixture type, outfitted with lamps, ballasts, and accessories identical to those indicated for the lighting fixture as applied in this Project.
 - a. For indicated fixtures, photometric data shall be certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining fixtures shall be certified by the manufacturer.
 - b. Photometric data shall be certified by a manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, based on input from installers of the items involved:
1. Lighting fixtures.
 2. Suspended ceiling components.
 3. Structural members to which suspension systems for lighting fixtures will be attached.
 4. Other items in finished ceiling including the following:
 - a. Air outlets and inlets.
 - b. Speakers.
 - c. Sprinklers.
 - d. Smoke and fire detectors.
 - e. Occupancy sensors.
 - f. Access panels.
- C. Samples for Verification: Interior lighting fixtures designated for sample submission in Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule. Each sample shall include the following:
1. Lamps: Specified units installed.
 2. Accessories: Cords and plugs.
- D. Product Certificates: For each type of ballast for bi-level and dimmer-controlled fixtures, signed by product manufacturer.
- E. Qualification Data: For agencies providing photometric data for lighting fixtures.

- F. Field quality-control test reports.
- G. Operation and Maintenance Data: For lighting equipment and fixtures to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.
- H. Warranties: Special warranties specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

- A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by manufacturers' laboratories that are accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
- B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7.
- C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.
- D. Comply with NFPA 70.
- E. FMG Compliance: Lighting fixtures for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FMG.
- F. Mockups: Provide interior lighting fixtures for room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.
 - 1. Obtain Architect's approval of fixtures for mockups before starting installations.
 - 2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
 - 3. Approved fixtures in mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 COORDINATION

- A. Coordinate layout and installation of lighting fixtures and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

1.7 WARRANTY

- A. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Lighting Unit Batteries: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining nine years.
 2. Warranty Period for Emergency Fluorescent Ballast and Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: Seven years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for first year, and prorated warranty for the remaining six years.
- B. Special Warranty for Ballasts: Manufacturer's standard form in which ballast manufacturer agrees to repair or replace ballasts that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
1. Warranty Period for Electronic Ballasts: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
 2. Warranty Period for Electromagnetic Ballasts: Three years from date of Substantial Completion.
- C. Special Warranty for T5 and T8 Fluorescent Lamps: Manufacturer's standard form, made out to Owner and signed by lamp manufacturer agreeing to replace lamps that fail in materials or workmanship, f.o.b. the nearest shipping point to Project site, within specified warranty period indicated below.
1. Warranty Period: One year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

1.8 EXTRA MATERIALS

- A. Furnish extra materials described below that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
1. Lamps: 10 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 2. Plastic Diffusers and Lenses: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 3. Battery and Charger Data: One for each emergency lighting unit.
 4. Ballasts: 1 for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
 5. Globes and Guards: 1 for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

- A. In other Part 2 articles where titles below introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:

- B. In Interior Lighting Fixture Schedule where titles below are column or row headings that introduce lists, the following requirements apply to product selection:
1. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, manufacturers specified.
 2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the manufacturers specified.
 3. Basis-of-Design Product: The design for each lighting fixture is based on the product named. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide either the named product or a comparable product by one of the other manufacturers specified.

2.2 LIGHTING FIXTURES AND COMPONENTS, GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

- A. Recessed Fixtures: Comply with NEMA LE 4 for ceiling compatibility for recessed fixtures.
- B. Incandescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5A.
- C. Fluorescent Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5 and NEMA LE 5A as applicable.
- D. HID Fixtures: Comply with UL 1598. Where LER is specified, test according to NEMA LE 5B.
- E. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
- F. Sheet Metal Components: Steel, unless otherwise indicated. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.
- G. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.
- H. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows, unless otherwise indicated:
1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
 2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
 3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.
 4. Laminated Silver Metallized Film: 90 percent.
- I. Plastic Diffusers, Covers, and Globes:
1. Acrylic Lighting Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic. High resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.

- a. Lens Thickness: At least **0.125 inch** minimum unless different thickness is indicated.
 - b. UV stabilized.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass, unless otherwise indicated.
- J. Electromagnetic-Interference Filters: Factory installed to suppress conducted electromagnetic-interference as required by MIL-STD-461E. Fabricate lighting fixtures with one filter on each ballast indicated to require a filter.
- K. Air-Handling Fluorescent Fixtures: For use with plenum ceiling for air return and heat extraction and for attaching an air-diffuser-boot assembly specified in Division 15 Section "Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles."
1. Air Supply Units: Slots in one or both side trims join with air-diffuser-boot assemblies.
 2. Heat Removal Units: Air path leads through lamp cavity.
 3. Combination Heat Removal and Air Supply Unit: Heat is removed through lamp cavity at both ends of the fixture door with air supply same as for air supply units.
 4. Dampers: Operable from outside fixture for control of return-air volume.
 5. Static Fixture: Air supply slots are blanked off, and fixture appearance matches active units.

2.3 BALLASTS FOR LINEAR FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Electronic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.11; instant-start type, unless otherwise indicated, and designed for type and quantity of lamps served. Ballasts shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated.
1. Sound Rating: A.
 2. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 10 percent.
 3. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 4. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
 6. BF: 0.85 or higher.
 7. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
 8. Parallel Lamp Circuits: Multiple lamp ballasts shall comply with ANSI C 82.11 and shall be connected to maintain full light output on surviving lamps if one or more lamps fail.
- B. Electromagnetic Ballasts: Comply with ANSI C82.1; energy saving, high-power factor, Class P, and having automatic-reset thermal protection.
1. Ballast Manufacturer Certification: Indicated by label.
- C. Single Ballasts for Multiple Lighting Fixtures: Factory-wired with ballast arrangements and bundled extension wiring to suit final installation conditions without modification or rewiring in the field.

- D. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
 - 1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - 2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
 - 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.

- E. Ballasts for Bi-Level Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
 - 1. Operating Modes: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated lamp between high- and low-level and off.
 - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - b. Low-Level Operation: 30 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - 2. Ballast shall provide equal current to each lamp in each operating mode.
 - 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated.

2.4 BALLASTS FOR COMPACT FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Description: Electronic programmed rapid-start type, complying with ANSI C 82.11, designed for type and quantity of lamps indicated. Ballast shall be designed for full light output unless dimmer or bi-level control is indicated:
 - 1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
 - 2. Automatic lamp starting after lamp replacement.
 - 3. Sound Rating: A.
 - 4. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 20 percent.
 - 5. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 - 6. Operating Frequency: 20 kHz or higher.
 - 7. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.7 or less.
 - 8. BF: 0.95 or higher, unless otherwise indicated.
 - 9. Power Factor: 0.95 or higher.
 - 10. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
 - 11. Ballast Case Temperature: 75 deg C, maximum.

- B. Ballasts for Dimmer-Controlled Lighting Fixtures: Electronic type.
 - 1. Dimming Range: 100 to 5 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - 2. Ballast Input Watts: Can be reduced to 20 percent of normal.
 - 3. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated.

2.5 EMERGENCY FLUORESCENT POWER UNIT

- A. Internal Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within lighting fixture body and compatible with ballast. Comply with UL 924.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate 1 fluorescent lamp(s) continuously at an output of 1100 lumens each. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
 2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously.
 3. Test Push Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening fixture or entering ceiling space.
 - a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
 6. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 7. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.
- B. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more fluorescent lamps, remote mounted from lighting fixture. Comply with UL 924.
1. Emergency Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to fixture ballast.
 2. Night-Light Connection: Operate one fluorescent lamp in a remote fixture continuously.
 3. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 4. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
 5. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure.
 6. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 7. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

2.6 BALLASTS FOR HID LAMPS

- A. Electromagnetic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Comply with ANSI C82.4 and UL 1029. Include the following features, unless otherwise indicated:
1. Ballast Circuit: Constant-wattage autotransformer or regulating high-power-factor type.
 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 22 deg F** for single-lamp ballasts.
 3. Normal Ambient Operating Temperature: **104 deg F**.
 4. Open-circuit operation that will not reduce average life.
 5. Low-Noise Ballasts: Manufacturers' standard epoxy-encapsulated models designed to minimize audible fixture noise.
- B. Electronic Ballast for Metal-Halide Lamps: Include the following features unless otherwise indicated:
1. Lamp end-of-life detection and shutdown circuit.
 2. Sound Rating: A.
 3. Total Harmonic Distortion Rating: Less than 15 percent.
 4. Transient Voltage Protection: IEEE C62.41, Category A or better.
 5. Lamp Current Crest Factor: 1.5 or less.
 6. Power Factor: .90 or higher.
 7. Interference: Comply with 47 CFR, Chapter 1, Part 18, Subpart C, for limitations on electromagnetic and radio-frequency interference for nonconsumer equipment.
 8. Protection: Class P thermal cutout.
 9. Retain subparagraph and associated subparagraphs below for bi-level ballasts.
 10. Bi-Level Dimming Ballast: Ballast circuit and leads provide for remote control of the light output of the associated fixture between high- and low-level and off.
 - a. High-Level Operation: 100 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - b. Low-Level Operation: 50 percent of rated lamp lumens.
 - c. Compatibility: Certified by ballast manufacturer for use with specific bi-level control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
 11. Continuous Dimming Ballast: Dimming range shall be from 100 to 35 percent of rated lamp lumens without flicker.
 - a. Ballast Input Watts: Reduced to a maximum of 50 percent of normal at lowest dimming setting.
 - b. Compatibility: Certified by manufacturer for use with specific dimming control system and lamp type indicated. Certified by lamp manufacturer that ballast operating modes are free from negative effect on lamp life and color-rendering capability.
- C. Auxiliary Instant-On Quartz System: Factory-installed feature automatically switches quartz lamp on when fixture is initially energized and when power outages occur.

System automatically turns quartz lamp off when HID lamp reaches approximately 60 percent light output.

- D. High-Pressure Sodium Ballasts: Electromagnetic type, with solid-state igniter/starter. Igniter-starter shall have an average life in pulsing mode of 10,000 hours at an igniter/starter-case temperature of 90 deg C.
 - 1. Instant-Restrike Device: Integral with ballast, or solid-state potted module, factory installed within fixture and compatible with lamps, ballasts, and mogul sockets up to 150 W.
 - a. Restrike Range: 105- to 130-V ac.
 - b. Maximum Voltage: 250-V peak or 150-V ac RMS.
 - 2. Minimum Starting Temperature: **Minus 40 deg F.**
 - 3. Open-circuit operation shall not reduce average lamp life.

2.7 EXIT SIGNS

- A. Description: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.
- B. Internally Lighted Signs:
 - 1. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, 2 for each fixture, 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
 - 2. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs, 70,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
 - 3. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Integral automatic charger in a self-contained power pack.
 - a. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, nickel-cadmium type.
 - b. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
 - c. Operation: Relay automatically energizes lamp from battery when circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
 - d. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
 - e. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
 - f. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
 - g. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

4. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:

- a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in ballast for power connection to remote unit.
- b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

2.8 EMERGENCY LIGHTING UNITS

A. Description: Self-contained units complying with UL 924.

1. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, lead-acid type.
2. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state type with sealed transfer relay.
3. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
4. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
5. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
6. Wire Guard: Heavy-chrome-plated wire guard protects lamp heads or fixtures.
7. Integral Time-Delay Relay: Holds unit on for fixed interval of 15 minutes when power is restored after an outage.
8. Remote Test: Switch in hand-held remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and flashing red LED.

2.9 FLUORESCENT LAMPS

- A. Low-Mercury Lamps: Comply with EPA's toxicity characteristic leaching procedure test; shall yield less than 0.2 mg of mercury per liter when tested according to NEMA LL 1.
- B. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 32 W maximum, nominal length of 48 inches, 2800 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500 K, and average rated life 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.

- C. T8 rapid-start lamps, rated 17 W maximum, nominal length of 24 inches, 1300 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 75 (minimum), color temperature 3500K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.
- D. T5 rapid-start lamps, rated 28 W maximum, nominal length of 45.2 inches, 2900 initial lumens (minimum), CRI 85 (minimum), color temperature 3000 K, and average rated life of 20,000 hours, unless otherwise indicated.

2.10 HID LAMPS

- A. High-Pressure Sodium Lamps: ANSI C78.42, CRI 21 (minimum), color temperature 1900 K, and average rated life of 24,000 hours, minimum.
 - 1. Dual-Arc Tube Lamps: Arranged so only one of two arc tubes is lighted at one time and, when power is restored after an outage, the cooler arc tube, with lower internal pressure, lights instantly, providing an immediate 8 to 15 percent of normal light output.
- B. Metal-Halide Lamps: ANSI C78.1372, with a minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- C. Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 65, and color temperature 4000 K.
- D. Ceramic, Pulse-Start, Metal-Halide Lamps: Minimum CRI 80, and color temperature 4000 K.

2.11 LIGHTING FIXTURE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

- A. Comply with Division 16 Section "Electrical Supports and Seismic Restraints" for channel- and angle-iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.
- B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as fixture.
- C. Twin-Stem Hangers: Two, 1/2-inch steel tubes with single canopy designed to mount a single fixture. Finish same as fixture.
- D. Wires: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage.
- E. Wires for Humid Spaces: ASTM A 580/A 580M, Composition 302 or 304, annealed stainless steel, 12 gage.
- F. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.
- G. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to fixture and line voltage and equipped with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

2.12 RETROFIT KITS FOR FLUORESCENT LIGHTING FIXTURES

- A. Comply with UL 1598 listing requirements.
 - 1. Reflector Kit: UL 1598, Type I. Suitable for two- to four-lamp, surface-mounted or recessed lighting fixtures by improving reflectivity of fixture surfaces.
 - 2. Ballast and Lamp Change Kit: UL 1598, Type II. Suitable for changing existing ballast, lamps, and sockets.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

- A. Lighting fixtures: Set level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls. Install lamps in each fixture.
- B. Support for Lighting Fixtures in or on Grid-Type Suspended Ceilings: Use grid as a support element.
 - 1. Install a minimum of four ceiling support system rods or wires for each fixture. Locate not more than **6 inches** from lighting fixture corners.
 - 2. Support Clips: Fasten to lighting fixtures and to ceiling grid members at or near each fixture corner with clips that are UL listed for the application.
 - 3. Fixtures of Sizes Less Than Ceiling Grid: Install as indicated on reflected ceiling plans or center in acoustical panel, and support fixtures independently with at least two **3/4-inch** metal channels spanning and secured to ceiling tees.
 - 4. Install at least one independent support rod or wire from structure to a tab on lighting fixture. Wire or rod shall have breaking strength of the weight of fixture at a safety factor of 3.
- C. Suspended Lighting Fixture Support:
 - 1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than **48 inches**, brace to limit swinging.
 - 2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Fixtures: Suspend with twin-stem hangers.
 - 3. Continuous Rows: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and tubing or rod for suspension for each unit length of fixture chassis, including one at each end.
- D. Air-Handling Lighting Fixtures: Install with dampers closed and ready for adjustment.
- E. Adjust aimable lighting fixtures to provide required light intensities.
- F. Connect wiring according to Division 16 Section "Conductors and Cables."

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

- A. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery and retransfer to normal.
- B. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

END OF DOCUMENT

Juno

Project: _____

Fixture Type: _____

Location: INTERIOR

Contact/Phone: _____

6" IC 1400 LUMEN LED DOWNLIGHT NEW CONSTRUCTION

IC1422LEDG4 RECESSED HOUSING



HYPERBOLIC TRIMS

PRODUCT DESCRIPTION

Dedicated LED, Air-Loc® sealed new construction housing with integral light engine • Housing allows for fit in 2 x 8 construction • Can be completely covered with insulation • Fully sealed housing stops infiltration and exfiltration of air, reducing heating and air cooling costs without the use of additional gaskets • LED housing is designed to provide 50,000 hours of life and is compatible with many standard Juno trims • 5 year limited warranty on LED components.

ENVIRONMENTALLY FRIENDLY, ENERGY EFFICIENT

- No harmful ultraviolet or infrared wavelengths
- No lead or mercury
- Comparable light output to 120W PAR38, BR40 incandescent or 32W compact fluorescent

PRODUCT SPECIFICATIONS

LED Light Engine LED array integrated to thermally conductive housing provides uninterrupted heat transfer to ensure long life of the LED

- Replaceable light engine mounts directly to housing and incorporates the latest generation, high lumen output LED array • LEDs are binned within a 3-step MacAdam Ellipse exceeding ENERGY STAR® requirements for superior fixture to fixture color uniformity • 2700K, 3000K, 3500K, or 4100K color temperatures available • 90 CRI minimum.

Hyperbolic Optical System Unique hyperbolic reflector shape optimized for small, directional LED source provides unique aperture appearance with reduced brightness • NMCT™ nano mixing chamber (provided with trim) with high reflectance white finish coupled with a high transmission diffusing lens conceals the LED and integrates with the hyperbolic trim to create a low glare, efficient system.

Aesthetic Trim Selections Hyperbolic reflector available in clear Alzak®, haze, wheat haze, black Alzak® and white • Shadow free, knife edge design blends seamlessly into ceiling • Installs with torsion springs.

LED Driver Choice of dedicated 120 volt driver or universal voltage driver that accommodates input voltages from 120-277 volts AC at 50/60Hz

- Power factor > 0.9 at 120V input • 120 volt only driver is dimmable with the use of most incandescent, magnetic low voltage and electronic low voltage wall box dimmers • Universal voltage driver is dimmable with the use of most 0-10V wall box dimmers • For a list of compatible dimmers, see [JUNOICLED-DIM](#)

Life Rated for 50,000 hours at 70% lumen maintenance.

Labels ENERGY STAR® Qualified when used with select trims • Certified to the high efficacy requirements of California T24 with select trims • UL listed for U.S. and Canada, through-branch wiring and damp locations • Union made • UL and cUL.

Testing All reports are based on published industry procedures; field performance may differ from laboratory performance.

Product specifications subject to change without notice.

HOUSING FEATURES

Housing Designed for use in IC (insulated ceiling) or non-IC construction

- Aluminum housing sealed for Air-Loc® compliance • Housing is vertically adjustable to accommodate up to a 2" ceiling thickness.

Junction Box Pre-wired junction box provided with (6) ½" and (1) ¾" knockouts, (4) knockouts for 12/2 or 14/2 NM cable and ground wire

- UL listed and cUL listed for through-branch wiring, maximum 8 #12 branch circuit conductors • Junction box provided with removable access plates • Knockouts equipped with pryout slots • Quick connect electrical connectors supplied as standard for fast, secure installation.

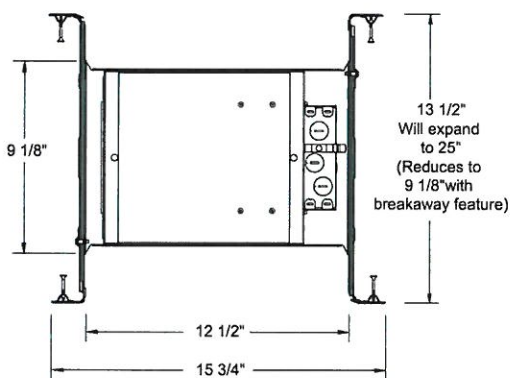
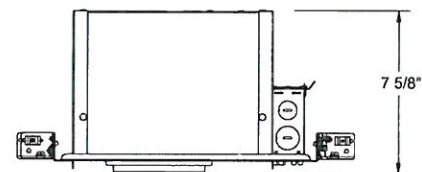
Mounting Frame 22-gauge die-formed galvanized steel mounting frame

- Rough-in section (junction box, mounting frame, housing and bar hangers) fully assembled for ease of installation.

Real Nail 3 Bar Hangers Patented (US Patent D552,969) Real Nail® 3 bar hangers: telescoping system permits quick placement of housing anywhere within 24" O.C. joists or suspended ceilings • Includes removable nail for repositioning of fixture in wood joist construction • Integral T-bar notch and clip for suspended ceilings.



DIMENSIONS



6 7/8" CEILING CUTOUT

ELECTRICAL DATA

Dedicated 120V Only Driver Option

120V	
Input Power	20.3W (+/-5%)
Input Current	0.17A
Frequency	50/60Hz
EMI/RFI	FCC Title 47 CFR, Part 15 Class B (residential)
Minimum starting temp	-25°C

ELECTRICAL DATA

Universal Voltage

	120V	277V
Input Power	20.3W (+/-5%)	20.8W (+/-5%)
Input Current	0.17A	0.08A
Frequency	50/60Hz	50/60Hz
EMI/RFI	FCC Title 47 CFR, Part 15 Class A (commercial)	FCC Title 47 CFR, Part 15 Class A (commercial)
Minimum starting temp	-40°C	-40°C

6" IC 1400 LUMEN LED DOWNLIGHT NEW CONSTRUCTION


IC1422LEDG4 RECESSED HOUSING HYPERBOLIC TRIMS

ORDERING INFORMATION: Housing, trim and accessories each ordered separately.

Example: **IC1422LEDG4-3K-1**

Housing	Color Temperature	Input Voltage
IC1422LEDG4	27K 2700K 3K 3000K 35K 3500K 41K 4100K	1 Dedicated 120V Only (Forward Phase + ELV dimmable) U Universal Voltage, 120-277V (0-10V dimmable)

Example: **27HYP3-HZ-WH**

Trim/Description		
	27HYP3-C-WH 27HYP3-B-WH' 27HYP3-W-WH 27HYP3-HZ-WH 27HYP3-WHZ-WH' 27HYP3-WHZ-ABZ'	Clear Alzak® Black Alzak® White Haze Wheat Haze Wheat Haze

¹ Not ENERGY STAR® Qualified or T24 certified

Trim Size: 7 $\frac{5}{8}$ " O.D.

Trim Finish: ABZ - Classic Aged Bronze, WH - White.

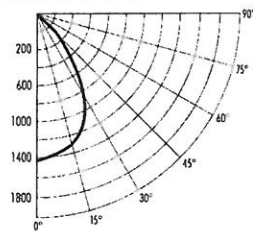
Alzak is a registered trademark of Alcoa Corp.

Note: In Canada when insulation is present, Type IC fixtures must be used.

PHOTOMETRIC REPORT

Test Report #: PT10141509R
Catalog No: IC1422LEDG4-35K
with 27HYP3-C-WH Trim
and standard nano mixing
chamber

Luminaire Spacing Criterion: 1.02
Luminaire LPW: 75



CANDLEPOWER DISTRIBUTION (Candelas)

Degrees Vertical	0°
0	1419
5	1408
15	1295
25	1082
35	630
45	186
55	1
65	0
75	0
85	0
90	0

Multiplier: 27K - 0.89
3K - 0.94
41K - 1.03

AVERAGE INITIAL FOOTCANDLES

Multiple Units (Square Array, 60"x60" room)

Ceiling 80% Wall 50% Floor 20%

Spacing	RCR1	RCR3	RCR5
4.0'	106	91	78
5.0'	68	58	50
6.0'	47	40	35
7.0'	38	33	28
8.0'	30	26	22
9.0'	23	20	17
10.0'	17	15	13

ZONAL LUMEN SUMMARY

Zone	Lumens	%Lamp	%Fixture
0-30°	989	N/A	64.6
0-40°	1373	N/A	89.7
0-60°	1530	N/A	100.0
0-90°	1530	N/A	100.0

INITIAL FOOTCANDLES

(One Unit, 20.3W, 67° Beam)

Distance to Illuminated Plane (Feet)	Footcandles Beam Center	Beam Diameter
4	88.7	5.3'
6	39.4	7.9'
8	22.2	10.6'
10	14.2	13.2'

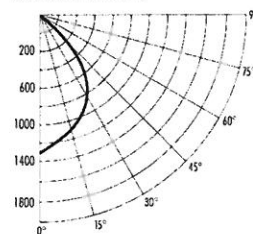
LUMINANCE (Average cd/m²)

Degrees	Average Luminance
45	15654
55	108
65	0
75	0
85	0

PHOTOMETRIC REPORT

Test Report #: PT10141508R
Catalog No: IC1422LEDG4-35K
with 27HYP3-HZ-WH Trim
and standard nano mixing
chamber

Luminaire Spacing Criterion: 1.00
Luminaire LPW: 71



CANDLEPOWER DISTRIBUTION (Candelas)

Degrees Vertical	0°
0	1339
5	1316
15	1168
25	972
35	623
45	184
55	14
65	0
75	0
85	0
90	0

Multiplier: 27K - 0.93
3K - 0.97
41K - 1.02

AVERAGE INITIAL FOOTCANDLES

Multiple Units (Square Array, 60"x60" room)

Ceiling 80% Wall 50% Floor 20%

Spacing	RCR1	RCR3	RCR5
4.0'	99	85	74
5.0'	63	55	47
6.0'	44	38	33
7.0'	36	31	26
8.0'	28	24	21
9.0'	22	19	16
10.0'	16	14	12

ZONAL LUMEN SUMMARY

Zone	Lumens	%Lamp	%Fixture
0-30°	896	N/A	62.4
0-40°	1273	N/A	88.7
0-60°	1436	N/A	100.0
0-90°	1436	N/A	100.0

INITIAL FOOTCANDLES

(One Unit, 20.3W, 68° Beam)

Distance to Illuminated Plane (Feet)	Footcandles Beam Center	Beam Diameter
4	83.7	5.4'
6	37.2	8.1'
8	20.9	10.8'
10	13.4	13.5'

LUMINANCE (Average cd/m²)

Degrees	Average Luminance
45	15453
55	1401
65	0
75	0
85	0

Fixtures tested to IES recommended standard for solid state lighting per LM-79-08. Photometric performance on a single unit represents a baseline of performance for the fixture. Results may vary in the field.



1300 S. Wolf Road • Des Plaines, IL 60018 • Phone (847) 827-9880 • Fax (847) 827-2925

220 Chrysler Drive • Brampton, Ontario • Canada L6S 6B6 • Phone (905) 792-7335 • Fax (905) 792-0064

Visit us at www.junolightinggroup.com

Printed in U.S.A. ©2015 Juno Lighting, LLC.

Job:

Type: EXTERIOR LIGHT

Notes:

Fascia Forms

Page 1 of 2

500 Series

Philips Gardco Fascia Forms are wall mounted luminaires utilizing compact fluorescent and high intensity discharge lamps. Fascia Forms are graceful architectural accents in the daytime and serve as elegant markers at night. White glass or white acrylic lenses diffuse light to produce a soft luminous glow. These luminaires are suitable for outdoor applications and feature rugged diecast housings, silicone seals and gaskets, and polyester powdercoat finishes.









PREFIX	LENS	w aTTaGE	VOLTaGE	GUa RDS	COLOR GELS	FINISH	OPTIONS
500	W	26QF	G2	XX	BRD	UH	

Enter the order code into the appropriate box above. Note: Philips Gardco reserves the right to refuse a configuration. Not all combinations and configurations are valid. Refer to notes below for exclusions and limitations. For questions or concerns, please consult the factory.

PREFIX	LENS	w aTTaGE
500 Fascia Forms	w White Glass D DRAcrylic Available with fluorescent or 50w HID only.	50MH ¹ 50HPS ¹² 26QF ³ INC ¹² 70MH ¹⁴ 70HPS ¹²⁴ 32TRF ³ 42TRF ³

VOLTaGE	GUa RDS
UNIV 120V through 277V, 50hz to 60Hz, input. Fluorescent luminaires only. 120 277 347 Consult factory for 347V prior to ordering.	MH Metal Halide (All MH 150 watts and below are Pulse Start by design.) HPS High Pressure Sodium QF Quad Tube Compact Fluorescent TRF Triple Tube Compact Fluorescent INC Incandescent 1. Coated lamps recommended 2. 120V only 3. 26QF, 32TRF and 42TRF types feature an electronic fluorescent ballast that accepts 120V through 277V, 50hz or 60hz input. Specify "UNIV" for 120V through 277V, 0°F starting temperature. 4. Wall mount units only.

GUa RDS
 NG No Guard  G1 Multi-Circle Cross  G2 Single-slot Cross  G3 Twin-slot Cross  G4 Multi-slot Cross  G5 Single-slot Crisscross

COLORED GELS	FINISH
XX No Color RD Red FP Fluorescent Pink BD Dark Blue YM Yellow a M Amber	BRP Bronze Paint BLP Black Paint w P White Paint NP Natural Aluminum Paint BGP Beige Paint OC Optional Color Paint Specify RAL designation ex: OC-RAL7024. SC Special Color Paint Specify. Must supply color chip.
BL Light Blue PL Pearl GD Dark Green MR Mirror SL Light Smoke BR Bronze	

OPTIONS
F Fusing UH Dark Sky Uplight Hood Painted to match housing standard. For two-tone option, specify hood color. example UH-WP

1611 Clovis B rker Ro d, S n M rcos, TX 78666
 (800) 227-0758 (512) 753-1000 Fa X: (512) 753-7855 stielighting.com
 © 2011 Koninklijke Philips Electronics N.V. All Rights Reserved.
 Philips Gardco reserves the right to change materials or modify the design of its product without notification as part of the company's continuing product improvement program.
 79115-94/0311



SPECIFICATIONS

GENERAL: Philips Gardco Fascia Forms wall mounted, outdoor luminaires utilize compact fluorescent and high intensity discharge lamps. Housing and mounting plate are diecast aluminum. White glass and DR acrylic lenses diffuse light to produce a soft luminous glow.

HOUSINGS: Single-piece diecast aluminum housings feature integral trim rings. Housing is secured to mounting plate with (3) stainless steel allen head fasteners. Memory retentive gasket seals housing to mounting plate to exclude moisture, dust, insects, and pollutants.

MOUNTING PLATE: Single piece diecast aluminum mounting plate is mounted over recessed j-box (by others) in wall or canopy. All electrical components are factory mounted to plate.

REFLECTOR: Spun high reflectance white reflector increases luminaire efficiency and provides even and striation free luminance on the face of the diffuser.

LENS: White glass or DR acrylic diffusers are mechanically secured to housing. One-piece solid silicone gasket is used to thoroughly seal lens to housing.

ELECTRICAL: All HID luminaires utilize magnetic ballasts that are high power factor and designed for reliable lamp starting to -20°F . Pulse rated sockets are glazed porcelain with nickel plated screw shells.

All fluorescent luminaires utilize electronic ballasts that are high power factor and designed for reliable lamp starting to 0°F . Smart fluorescent ballasts accept 26W, 32W and 42W in all voltages from 120 to 277, 50/60HZ. 347V also available. Sockets are high temperature PBT with brass contacts.

FINISH: Each luminaire receives a fade and abrasion resistant electrostatically applied, thermally cured, (TGIC) polyester powdercoat finish.

LABELS: All luminaires bear UL or CUL (where applicable) Wet Location labels.

WARRANTY: Philips Gardco luminaires feature a 5 year limited warranty. See Warranty Information on www.sitelighting.com for complete details and exclusions. Polycarbonate lenses carry a 1 year warranty only.

DIMENSIONS

